

Connect

الصف الخامس الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Prepared by: Senior English Teachers

5



ذاكر
طرح

استمتع بتجربة التعلم التفاعلي مع الأضواء.

معلم

- فصول افتراضية.
- بنك أسئلة.
- قم بإنشاء اختباراتك الخاصة.
- شارك اختباراتك مع طلابك
- وفصولك الخاصة.
- أرسل إشعارات المتابعة المختلفة.
- تقارير متابعة مستوى الطلاب.

ولي أمر

- فيديوهات شرح الدروس.
- تدريبات واختبارات تفاعلية.
- تقارير متابعة مستوى الأبناء.
- هدايا ومكافآت.

طالب

- فصول افتراضية.
- فيديوهات شرح الدروس.
- تدريبات واختبارات تفاعلية.
- تقارير متابعة المستوى.
- مسابقات وهدايا.
- أسأل الأضواء.



Contents



Theme 3 My society

Unit 7: Homes in Egypt	8
Unit 8: At the doctor's	43
Unit 9: My favorite animal	82
Non-fiction Reader: Are There Endangered Animals in Egypt?	118

Theme 4 Being responsible

Unit 10: Let's visit Egypt	122
Unit 11: Getting out in the fresh air	155
Unit 12: Vacations	186
Fiction Reader: A Fantastic Family Adventure	226
Tape scripts	247



Scope and sequence

Theme 3: My society

	Unit 7: Homes in Egypt	Unit 8: At the doctor's	Unit 9: My favorite animal
Vocabulary	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The home: armchair, balcony, cushion, closet, elevator, oven, shower, television, bedroom, kitchen, bathroom, living room Adjectives: unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky, unsafe, unhappy, unfair, annoying, awesome, awful, boring, brilliant, cool, friendly, funny, interesting gate, oven, pot, reed, roof, rug, sleeping area, linen 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Health: ankle, back, cold, cough, earache, headache, shoulder, sore throat, stomachache, toothache Nature: glacier, lake, ocean, river, stream, bathwater, drinking water, fresh water, salt water, stream, salt, rain blind, trunk, flexible, tusk, spear, rope, unwell, relative, crowded, staff, injection, corridor, helpful, hospital, patient, bandage, sunscreen, honey and lemon, pill, cut knee, sunburn, headache, treatment, wound, bacteria, infect, heal, scissors, insect bite, cream, cleansing wipe, medical gloves, rubber band, safety pin, soap 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Animals: kangaroo, ponda, bai, lion, penguin, dolphin, snail, parrot, wonderful, wildlife park, pouch, shelter, rest, save, trunk, branch, nut, exhausted, breeze, useless, ungrateful, comfortable
Language	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Saying where things are, i.e. on the right/left, in the middle of the room, on the wall The negative prefix -un, i.e. unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky, etc. Past simple affirmative and negative, i.e. I visited her house when I was five. I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question. Past time expressions with ago, i.e. two years ago 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Using "have" to talk about illness, i.e. I have a headache. Do you have an earache? Asking about illness, i.e. What's the matter? Where does it hurt? Negative prefixes, i.e. un- (unusual), ir- (irresponsible), il- (illegal), im- (impossible) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Can" for ability in the present, i.e. I can play basketball. I can't speak Italian. "Could" for ability in the past, i.e. I could speak French when I lived in France. I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk. The noun suffix -er, i.e. teach - teacher -ed and -ing adjectives, i.e. I am very interested in History. History is so interesting!
Reading	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Story about a dangerous experience in the jungle Text about homes in Ancient Egypt Blog about unusual homes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Story about listening to other people's opinions Text about a hospital in India Text about the health benefits of honey Presentation about staying healthy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An online chat about a day at a wildlife park Aesop's <i>The travelers and the tree</i> Text about Ancient Egyptian society Email about an unusual animal
Listening	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dialog between two friends about living in a new apartment 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dialog between mom and son about feeling unwell Dialog between doctor and patient 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> about the water cycle
Speaking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Describing your own home Talking about the perfect room 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Talking about illness 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Talking about things you could/couldn't do at different ages Talking about sources of water Discussion about Ancient Egyptian society
Writing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blog about unusual homes using a range of adjectives 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A short paragraph about staying healthy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Email about an unusual animal
Project	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Poster about what to include in a first-aid kit 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Infographic about an animal habitat
Phonics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correctly pronounce double vowels, e.g. pool, sheep Correctly pronounce oo in words: /u:/, as in pool; /a/ as in good; /ʌ/, as in blood 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> /f/ and /v/ minimal pairs, e.g. van - fan, life - live Correctly pronounce the negative prefixes un- (unusual), ir- (irresponsible), il- (illegal), and im- (impossible) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correctly pronounce voiced sounds: /v/ (e.g. vase) and /w/ (e.g. winter)
Life skills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision making: Decorating your own bedroom 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Critical thinking: Working out treatments for illnesses, Why is water so important for our health? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Critical thinking: Why are trees important? Why is water so important in our everyday lives?
Values	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Respect: Showing respect for cultural heritage 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Respect: Respecting other people's opinions Appreciating science 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appreciation and gratitude: Appreciating the small things in life
Issues and challenges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cultural responsibility: How can we preserve ancient artifacts for the future? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What do you do to stay healthy? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Environmental responsibility: Water is important in our life.
Integrated cross-cultural topics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Social studies: How Ancient Egyptians made their homes Math: Rounding decimals Project: Presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Social studies: Distribution of water on Earth Math: Bar charts Project: Poster about what to include in a first-aid kit 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Science: The water cycle Social studies: Ancient Egyptian society Project: Infographic about an animal habitat

Theme 4: Being responsible

	Unit 10: Let's visit Egypt	Unit 11: Getting out in the fresh air	Unit 12: Vacations
Vocabulary	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Places in a city: museum, restaurant, market, bank, beach, library, station, factory, monument, bank, square, shopping mall, cuisine, originally, on vacation Activities: play music, bake bread, read a book, make a phone call, visit a temple, sail on the Nile, painting, artifact, tomb, hieroglyphics 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nature: city, village, leaf, hill, lock, plant, tree, stream, grass, cactus, tamarisk plant, palm tree, desert snail, jerboa Adverbs: happily, slowly, heavily, sadly, hard, well, quickly, carefully, nicely, brightly, mainland, route, fascinating Hiking equipment: hiking shoes, scarf, blanket, water bottle, hat, sunglasses, snack, map, tent, sweater, sunlight, exercise, scientist, silence, tip, nature 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Travel: hotel, passport, swimming pool, suitcase, ticket, tourist, beach, camera, city, museum, sunglasses, theme park Resources: natural, man-made, stone, plastic, sunlight, gold, sand, galabeya, leather, bread, fruit, crops, grain, basket, reeds Water sources: rain, river, well, lake, water pump, stream, tap, ocean, groundwater, surface water, desert, land, materials, nutrient, traditional, day trip, capital, wander, handicrafts, stall
Language	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use imperatives to tell someone to do something: Don't be late tomorrow! Come here, Loma! Go to the end of the street and turn right. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Review of plural nouns, i.e. house – houses, city – cities, leaf – leaves Forming adverbs, i.e. slow – slowly, happy – happily, irregular forms: hard – hard, fast – fast, good – well Review of comparative adjectives, i.e. The train is quicker than the bus. Talking about plans and making suggestions, i.e. Are you free on the weekend? That sounds like fun/great. Cool! Awesome! How about / What about meeting up? Let's meet at 3. Word building: adjectives and adverbs suffixes: -ful and -fully (e.g. beauty – beautiful – beautifully) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prepositions of time, i.e. on Mondays / my birthday, at 8 p.m. / lunchtime, in June / 2010 The adjective suffixes -ous (e.g. dangerous, famous) and -ive (e.g. creative, expensive)
Reading	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Text about a famous Egyptian city Text about culture in Ancient Egypt Story about the importance of asking for help and being polite 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emails about a nature trail weekend Text about the Red Sea Mountain Trail Text messages: making plans for a trip 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Email about a vacation Short texts about natural and man-made resources Text about freshwater sources Text about a trip to Jordan Diary entry about a trip
Listening	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vox pops about Alexandria 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conversation between three friends deciding what to pack for a nature trip 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> about natural resources Short dialogs about plans for different times of the day
Speaking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Talking about places in your town or city Giving instructions Asking for and giving directions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Discussion about what to pack on a nature trip Discussion about the value of getting out into nature Describing a picture using adjectives and adverbs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Talking about a place you would like to visit Talking about things to do on vacation Talking about things you do at different times of the day
Writing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paragraph about your town or city 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Text messages: making plans for a trip 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diary entry about a day when you did something special
Project	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Poster about your perfect town 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Design and present the perfect nature trail 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A poster about your perfect vacation
Phonics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify and correctly pronounce diphthongs, e.g. /əʊ/ as in show, /eɪ/ as in eight, /aɪ/ as in toy, /aɪ/ as in right. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correctly pronounce the sounds /n/ (e.g. nose) and /ŋ/ (e.g. sing) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correctly pronounce the sounds /θ/ (e.g. thing) and /ð/ (e.g. these)
Life skills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Creativity and collaboration: Creating 'your perfect town' 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Creativity and collaboration: Creating 'the perfect nature trail' Critical thinking: Identifying the value of getting out into nature 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision making: Things to take on vacation Where to go on vacation
Values	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Honesty and kindness: Offering, accepting and recognizing the need for help Being polite 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Well-being: Appreciating and making the most of your time in nature 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Independence and flexibility: Deciding on what you would enjoy doing on vacation Respect and personal growth: Respecting privacy: do not read other people's diaries
Issues and challenges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-reflection: Do you ask for help when you need it? Why is asking for help a good thing? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Making sensible choices: How can you enjoy your time in nature? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Environmental responsibility: Using natural and man-made resources How can you make your vacation more environmentally friendly?
Integrated cross-cultural topics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Social studies: Cultural life in the Ancient Egyptian civilization Math: Estimating Project: Poster about your perfect town 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Social studies and Geography: The Red Sea Mountain Trail and the Maaza people Math: Adding mixed numbers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Science: Natural and man-made resources Math: Triangles

My society

THEME

3

مجتمعي



Parents' tips:

Theme Three "My society" aims to help students understand more about the community they live in. They should know more about the suitable environment to live in and how to make their environment easier to live the most common celebrations in their community, and what makes their community special such as; food, culture, and so on.

المحور الثالث "مجتمعي" يهدف إلى مساعدة التلاميذ في فهم مجتمعهم الذي يعيشون فيه. يجب عليهم أن يتعرفوا أكثر بالبيئة المناسبة للمعيشة وكيف يجعلون من بيئتهم مكاناً أسهل للمعيشة، وكذلك الاحتفالات الهامة بمجتمعهم وما يجعل مجتمعهم مميزاً مثل: الطعام والثقافة وغيرها.

Homes in Egypt

منازل فى مصر



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
- talk about the home and furniture.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
- learn how to say double vowels.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

• يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة.

• يتحدث عن المنزل والأثاث.

• يقرأ، يفهم، ويستمع إلى محادثة قصيرة عن منازل مختلفة.

• يفهم ويستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط ليتحدث عن أحداث في الماضي.

• يتعلم كيف ينطق أصوات حروف متحركة مزدوجة.

• يكتب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غير عادى.

• يبحث ويقوم بعمل عرض تقديمى عن منزل مصرية قديم.

Warm up



This unit is about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt. It also talks about furniture at home.

تحدث هذه الوحدة عن المنازل فى مصر الآن ومصر القديمة. نتحدث أيضًا عن الأثاث فى المنزل.

Did you know?

In Ancient Egypt, mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and vents on the roof let air into the house. Ancient Egyptians stayed cool by hanging wet reeds in their windows. The breeze would blow through the water-soaked plants and send cool air into their houses.



فى مصر القديمة، كان الطوب الطينى اللبنى يُبقى المنزل من الداخل باردًا فى الطقس الحار. تسمح النوافذ الصغيرة والفتحات على السطح بمرور الهواء داخل المنزل. كان المصريون القدماء أيضًا يحافظون على برودتهم بتعليق القصب المبلل على النوافذ. كان النسيم يمر عبر النباتات المبللة بالماء فيبعث الهواء البارد داخل منازلهم.

I can find it out!

There were different types of houses in Ancient Egypt; "reed huts" were the first type of homes built in Ancient Egypt. These huts were constructed from papyrus, reeds, and animals' skin. The second type was "mud brick house", it is a simple structure for poorer people. The third type was "merchant home", it was also constructed of mud, but it was larger. The fourth type was "stone mansions" it was constructed of stones for nobles.



أكواخ القصب reed huts



مبنى من الطوب اللبن mud brick house



قصور حجرية stone mansions

كانت هناك أنواع مختلفة من المنازل فى مصر القديمة؛ كانت «أكواخ القصب» هى النوع الأول من المنازل التى تم بناؤها فى مصر القديمة. شيدت هذه الأكواخ من أوراق البردى والقصب وجلد الحيوانات. النوع الثانى كان «منزل من الطوب اللبن»، وهو عبارة عن بناء بسيطة للفقراء. أما النوع الثالث فكان «منزل التاجر»، وقد تم تشييده أيضًا من الطين ولكنه كان أكبر. أما النوع الرابع فكان عبارة عن «قصور حجرية» شيدت للنبل.



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Main Vocabulary



elevator

مصعد



closet

خزانة



cushion

وسادة



oven

فرن



balcony

بلكونة



armchair

كرسي ذو ذراعين



television

تلفاز



shower

دش



bed

سرير



bedroom

غرفة النوم



living room

غرفة المعيشة



kitchen

مطبخ



bathroom

حمام

Extra vocabulary

modern (adj.)	حديث	apartment	شقة
part	جزء	closer (adj.)	أقرب
better	أفضل	easier (adj.)	أسهل
space	مساحة	traditional (adj.)	تقليدي
fantastic (adj.)	رائع	poster	ملصق
comfortable (adj.)	مريح		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
move ينتقل	moved	share يتشارك	shared
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	say يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

welcome to ...	مرحبًا بك في ...
Come in!	تفضل بالدخول!
How long ...?	كم المدة...؟ (للسؤال عن فترة زمنية)
since I was born.	منذ ولادتي
had to + (inf.)	كان يجب عليك أن

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة وبعده يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية QR code.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Why is Fareeda happy?



Fareeda

Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

أهلاً دينا، مرحباً بك في شقتي الجديدة! تفضل بالدخول!

Dina

Thanks! Do you like living here?

شكراً! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟



Fareeda

I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهي أكبر من شقتنا القديمة.

Dina

How long did you live in your old apartment?

كم المدة التي عشتها بشقتك القديمة؟



Fareeda

Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

اثنا عشر عامًا. منذ ولادتي. ثم كان على والدي الانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة، ولذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.

Dina

So, what's better about this new apartment?

إذاً، ما الأفضل بهذه الشقة الجديدة؟



Fareeda

Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

تعال لترى. المطبخ الجديد أكبر، والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول أمي إن الطهي فيه أسهل بكثير.



Dina



Very nice. And this is the living room?

لطيف جدًا. وهذه هي غرفة المعيشة؟



Fareeda

Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

نعم، كما ترون، هناك مساحة أكبر ولذلك يمكننا أن نملك تلفازًا أكبر. انظري إلى هذه الوسادات التقليدية. لقد كانوا هدية من جدتي.

Dina



Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

أوه، نعم! ماذا عن غرف النوم؟



Fareeda

We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أنا أشارك غرفة مع أختي، أميرة، لكن غرفتنا كبيرة حقًا، ولدينا حمامان.

Dina



It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic, too – what a great view!

هذا لطيف! البلكونة رائعة أيضًا – ياله من منظر رائع!

Language Functions

Asking about a period:

السؤال عن المدة الزمنية:

How long ...?

e.g. A: How long did you live in your old apartment?

B: Twelve years, since I was born.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية ال QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

A 1 A: Do you like living here?

2 We have a new oven ...

3 I share a room ...

4 The balcony is fantastic.

5 A: How long did you live in your old apartment?

B a. () What a great view!

b. () with my sister Soha.

c. () moved to a new apartment.

d. () B: Yes, it's a great apartment.

e. () which is much easier to cook in.

f. () B: Twelve years, since I was born.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

1 share - room - sister - a - my - I - with.

2 better - new - this - What's - about - apartment?

3 to - new - apartment - my - Welcome.

4 new - more - oven - The - modern - is.

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My new apartment" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

three bedrooms - big balcony

Parents' tips

- Help your child read and match.
- Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



Listening

12

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

- Dina is at Fareeda's new
- The new apartment is much than the old apartment.
- They have three and two bathrooms.
- The balcony is

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

My name is Dalida. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love living here in this new apartment. I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dareen, but our bedroom is really big. I like our new apartment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Dalida moved to a new last week.
a) school b) class c) apartment d) city
- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a) apartment b) bed c) kitchen d) oven

B Answer the following questions:

- What is the general idea of the text?
- How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?

Writing

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

1 Why is fareeda happy

2 i share a room with my sister



Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



Language Focus



Telling where things are:



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

e.g.



On the right, there is my bed
with a desk next to it.

على اليمين سريري بجانبه مكتب.



On the left, there is
my sister's bed.

على اليسار سرير أختي.



In the middle of the room,
there is an armchair.

في منتصف الغرفة، يوجد كرسي ذو ذراعين.



On the wall, there are lots of
posters of animals.

على الحائط يوجد الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

Parents' tips

Help your child tell where things around him/her are correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يخبر بأماكن الأشياء من حوله بطريقة صحيحة.

Prefix "un-"

The prefix "un-" means "not".

البادئة "un-" تعني «لا».

e.g. He looks unhappy. = He doesn't look happy.

The armchair is very uncomfortable. = The armchair isn't comfortable.



Definitions

unfriendly	غير ودود	not kind to someone	غير طيب مع شخص ما
uncomfortable	غير مريح	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body	شيء لا تشعر بالراحة عندما تستخدمه للجلوس أو عند ارتدائه
unlucky	غير محظوظ	something bad happens to you without a reason	شيء سيئ يحدث لك بدون سبب
unsafe	غير آمن	dangerous	خطر
unhappy	غير سعيد	sad	حزين
unfair	غير عادل	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair	شيء يحدث غير صحيح أخلاقياً أو عادل

Parents' tips

Help your child use the prefix "un-" correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم البادئة "un-" بطريقة صحيحة.

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Usage: الاستخدام

We use the past simple tense to talk about:

- Something that happened once:

e.g. I **visited** her house when I **was** five.

- Something that happened several times in the past:

e.g. We **went** to my aun's house at the beach **every** summer.

- Something that was true for some time in the past:

e.g. He **loved** living in his grandmother's apartment **as a** child.

- Expressions with ago:

e.g. I **met** her in Zagazig **two** years "ago".

Affirmative: الإثبات

1) Regular verbs:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (ed/d/ied) ...



I **visited** my grandma yesterday.

زرت جدتي بالأمس.

- We add "-ed" at the end of most regular verbs.

- نضيف "-ed" في نهاية معظم الأفعال المنتظمة.

e.g. want → wanted help → helped

- When the regular verb ends with "e", we add only "-d" at the end of the verb.

- عندما ينتهي الفعل المنتظم بـ "e" نضيف فقط "-d" في نهاية الفعل.

e.g. die → died create → created

- When the regular verb ends with "y" preceded by a consonant letter, we delete the "y" and add "-ied" at the end of the verb.

- عندما ينتهي الفعل المنتظم بحرف الـ "y" مسبقاً بحرف ساكن، نحذف الـ "y" ونضيف "-ied" في نهاية الفعل.

e.g. carry → carried

2) Irregular verbs:

الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

Irregular verbs are all different. We have to learn the affirmative past simple of each irregular verb.

الأفعال غير المنتظمة مختلفة. يجب علينا أن نتعلم كل فعل غير منتظم على حدة:

e.g.

Present	Past	Present	Past
come	came	eat	ate
go	went	know	knew
meet	met	tell	told
set	set		

Negative: النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g.



I **didn't** know the answer to the teacher's question.

أنا لم أكن أعرف الإجابة عن سؤال المعلم.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ هل:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

B: Yes,

did.

B: No,

didn't.

e.g.



A: Did you **travel** all over Egypt?

هل سافرت في جميع أنحاء مصر؟

B: Yes, I **did**.

نعم، لقد سافرت.

e.g.

A: Did you **eat** Om Ali yesterday?

هل أكلت «أم علي» بالأمس؟

B: No, I **didn't**.

لا، لم أكلها.



Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام:

A: Question word | did | subject | (inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

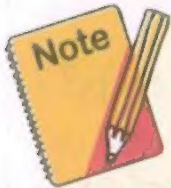


A: When did it rain?

B: It rained yesterday.

متى أمطرت؟

أمطرت بالأمس.



- عند الإجابة تحول "you" في السؤال إلى "I" أو "We".

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I (help – helped – am helping – helping) my mom carry our heavy cases yesterday.
- I (don't – didn't – wasn't – doesn't) travel to America when I was a child.
- A: Did you (visit – visited – visiting – visits) your grandma last holiday?
B: Yes, I did.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the past simple tense in the affirmative and question form.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة الإثبات والسؤال.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My uncle is a **scientist**⁽¹⁾ and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very **friendly**⁽²⁾ and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something **frightening**⁽³⁾ happened to him and he was **lucky**⁽⁴⁾ he lived to tell me about it!



Howler monkeys in the jungle

He was very interested in **howler monkeys**⁽⁵⁾ and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local **villager**⁽⁶⁾ told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be **unsafe**⁽⁷⁾."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was **deep in**⁽⁸⁾ the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the **path**⁽⁹⁾ to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and **carried him away down**⁽¹⁰⁾ to the river. He was very frightened.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy **indeed**⁽¹¹⁾!

- | | |
|------|----------------------------|
| (1) | عالم |
| (2) | ودود |
| (3) | مخيف |
| (4) | محظوظ |
| (5) | قردة العواء (قردة أمريكية) |
| (6) | قروي |
| (7) | غير آمن |
| (8) | في أعماق |
| (9) | طريق |
| (10) | حملته للأسفل |
| (11) | حقاً |

Check point

- What is his uncle's job?
- Why was his uncle happy at the end?

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

- عمي عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان صغيراً سافر كثيراً إلى أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله. ثم، منذ حوالي ثلاث سنوات، شيء ما مخيف حدث له وكان محظوظاً لأنه عاش ليخبرني به!
- كان عمي مهتماً جداً بالقردة العواء «قردة أمريكية» وأراد إجراء بعض الأبحاث على مجموعات عائلاتهم. أخبره قروي محلي بمكان عائلة قردة العواء في مكان قريب وكان سعيداً جداً. لكن القروي قال أيضاً «غداً، سوف تساقط أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن».
- شرع عمي في البحث عن عائلة القردة العواء وسرعان ما أصبح في العمق في الأدغال. كان يسمع القردة ونظر إلى الأعلى. وعلم أنه كان يبدو قريباً جداً منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطاراً غزيرة جداً. سرعان ما أصبح الماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق حتى يتقدم أو يرجع. فجأة، تدفق الكثير من الماء حاملاً إياه للأسفل إلى النهر. كان خائفاً جداً.
- فجأة، رأى يداً وكان شخص ما يصيح. كان القروي. أخذ يد العم وقال، «الآن أنت بأمان!» كان عمي سعيداً جداً بحق!

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 I never sit on that green armchair.
 - 2 I traveled to Aswan ...
 - 3 "Unfriendly" means ...
 - 4 In the middle of the room, ...
 - 5 "Unsafe" means ...

- B**
- a. () when I was five.
 - b. () dangerous.
 - c. () something bad happens to you without reason.
 - d. () not kind to someone.
 - e. () It's very uncomfortable.
 - f. () there is an armchair.

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

4

- 1 I visit my uncle two months ago. (.....)
- 2 The people don't help him with his work yesterday. (.....)
- 3 She's very friendly, she never smiles or tries to make friends. (.....)
- 4 On the wall, there are a poster of my favorite animal. (.....)

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 ago – met – years – her – I – two.
.....
- 2 you – travel – all – over – Egypt – all?
.....
- 3 didn't – by – They – here – come – airplane.
.....
- 4 traveled – South – a lot – uncle – My – America – in.
.....

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
- (2) Help your child correct the underlined words.
- (3) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

Listening

15

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Omar's favorite room is his bedroom. ()
- 2 On the right, there is a couch with two modern cushions. ()
- 3 On the left, there is a desk. ()
- 4 Omar loves watching television at night with his family. ()

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family deep in the jungle. Suddenly, there was a lot of rain and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was a villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My uncle is a and loves animals.
a) teacher b) scientist c) vet d) doctor
- 2 "Do research" means
a) get more information b) play c) travel d) help

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did your uncle travel a lot in South America?
- 4 Why did the uncle go deep in the jungle?

Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My perfect room" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

- What's your favorite room?
- What things make a perfect room for you?

Assess your progress

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%



Ancient Egyptian Homes



Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



mud bricks

الطوب اللبن



gate



oven



pot

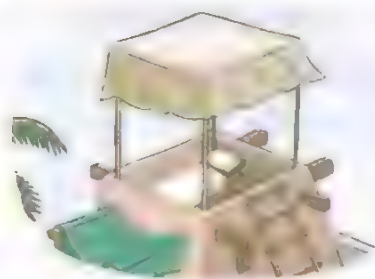


roof



reed mat

حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب



sleeping area

near	بالقرب من	cooler (adj.)	أكثر برودة	flat (adj.)	مسطح/مستو
furniture	أثاث	papyrus	ورق البردي	large (adj.)	كبير الحجم
wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية	floor	طابق (دور)	bank	ضفة النهر
style	طراز				

Conjugation of verbs نصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
use يستخدم	used	paint يدهن	painted
cook يطهى	cooked	relax يستريح (يستريح)	relaxed
cover يغطي	covered	store يخزن	stored
join يلتحق بـ	joined		

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
build يبني	built	make يصنع / يجعل	made
sleep ينام	slept	keep يحافظ على	kept
blow يهب	blew	fall يسقط	fell

close together

قريبون من بعضهم

save space

يوفر مساحة

just like

تمامًا مثل

all right

على ما يرام

never to fall

غير قابل للسقوط أبدًا



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (tu) في كلمة (furniture) ينطقان (تأ) (تش).

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The **mud bricks**⁽¹⁾ made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.

Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were **reed mats**⁽²⁾ to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space. So they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.



- (1) الطوب اللبن
(2) حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب

Check point

1 How did Ancient Egyptians keep their houses cool?

2 How was the furniture in Ancient Egypt?

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

- في مصر القديمة، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل. فكانوا يستخدمون مياهه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل. كما استخدموا أيضًا الطين من النهر لصنع الطوب لبناء منازلهم. الطوب اللبن يصنع حوائط قوية للغاية.
- أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم. ساعد الطوب اللبن في فعل هذا. قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة تحتوي على أسطح مستوية، والتي كانت أكثر جوء بارد في المنزل. غالبًا ما كانت تطبخ العائلات، ويتناولون الطعام، ويسترخون، وينامون هناك في الليالي الحارة. كان الكاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر مصنوعة من القصب للجلوس والتوهم عليها. استخدموا أوراق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. كان هذا يقي الحشرات في الخارج. في كل بيت كانت هناك أوان وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسر أو كراس.
- في المدن، كان الناس يعيشون قريبين جدًا من بعضهم البعض، ولذلك قاموا ببناء منازلهم أطول، مع طابقين. هذا يوفر مساحة. ولذلك تمكنوا من بناء منازل أكثر. انضمت منازل المدينة معًا، تمامًا كما هو الحال اليوم. في الريف، عادة ما تحتوي المنازل على طابق واحد فقط، كما تحتوي أيضًا على حديقة. كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويريون الدجاج بها.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:

Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,

Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.

على ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،

كان للسبوت المصرية أسلوب خاص:

الظلام من الداخل مع النوافذ الصغيرة،

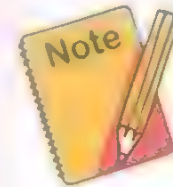
حصائر القصب على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة،

في الخارج تحت السجوم ليلاً،

عائلة واحدة معًا، يشعرون أنهم على ما يرام.

جعل الطين من النيل جدرانهم

آمنة وقوية ولا تسقط أبدًا.



Each two lines rhyme together. They end with the same sound.

كل سطرين بينهما قافية، ينتهيان بنفس الصوت.

Parents' tips

Help your child read the poem correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصيدة بطريقة صحيحة.

Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

In English there are words with double vowels, like "pool" and "sheep".

توجد في اللغة الإنجليزية كلمات ذات أحرف متحركة مزدوجة، مثل pool و sheep.

A) When there is a double 'e' in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "e" مزدوج في الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.

B) When there is a double 'o' in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "o" مزدوج في الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.

ee /i:/

three



keep



cheese



tree



sheep



seed



queen



oo /u:/

school

مدرسة



tool

أداة



spoon

ملعقة



roof

سقف



pool

حمام سباحة



Saying 'oo' in words

نطق 'oo' في الكلمات

When you see 'oo' in a word, you can say /u:/, as in "pool" and "spoon". We can also pronounce 'oo' as a shorter sound, /ʊ/, as in words like "good" and or as /ʌ/, as in a word like "blood".

عندما ترى "oo" في كلمة، يمكنك قول /u:/، كما في pool and spoon. يمكننا أيضًا نطق "oo" كصوت أقصر، /ʊ/، كما

في كلمات مثل good أو /ʌ/، كما في كلمة blood.

/u:/

school

مدرسة

smooth

لسلس

zoo

حديقة حيوانات

find

أجد

noon

ظهيرة

spoon

ملعقة

pool

حمام سباحة

/ʊ/

book

كتاب

cook

طبخ

wood

خشب

good

جيد

wool

صوف

/ʌ/

blood

دم

blood

دم

Parents tip

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية ال QR code.



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Rounding decimals

تقريب الكسور العشرية

What are decimal numbers?

ما هي الأرقام العشرية؟

Decimal numbers are numbers in a scale of tens.

الأرقام العشرية هي أرقام بمقياس عشرات.

e.g. 13.95

1	3	.	9	5
tens	units	decimal point	tenths	hundredths
		العلامة العشرية	جزء من عشرة (1/10)	جزء من مئة (1/100)
			digits after the decimal point	
			أرقام بعد العلامة العشرية	

We can round the number after the decimal point to the nearest whole number. It makes the numbers shorter and easier to use.

يمكننا تقريب الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية لأقرب عدد صحيح. التقريب يجعل الأرقام أقصر وأسهل في الاستخدام.

1 If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round up to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم في خانة العشرات هو 5 أو أكثر، فسنقرب لأقرب أكبر رقم صحيح.

13.95 becomes 14.

2 If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we'll round down to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم في خانة العشرات أقل من 5، فسنقرب لأقرب أصغر رقم صحيح.

134.3 becomes 134.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify how to round decimal numbers.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تقريب الكسور العشرية.



Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

- 1 Ancient Egyptians used mud ...
- 2 There were reed mats to ...
- 3 In cities, people built ...
- 4 In the countryside, houses usually had ...
- 5 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes ...

B

- a. () their houses taller.
- b. () from the river to make bricks.
- c. () one floor.
- d. () It's a great apartment.
- e. () sit and sleep on.
- f. () was very different from today.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 near – their – the – homes – Nile – **They** – made.

2 cities, – people – together – – lived – close.

3 houses – special – Egyptian – style – **And** – had.

4 did – people – build – **What** – use – to – their homes?

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 egyptian houses had a special style

2 where did people build their homes in ancient Egypt?

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
- (2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 3 & 4



Listening

15

استمع و أكمل:

4

1 Listen and complete:

- Salma is doing research about Ancient Egyptian
- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very from today.
- There were mats to sit and sleep on.
- They used to cover the windows and doors.



Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. Ancient Egyptian houses had a special style. The houses were made of mud bricks. The walls were very strong. Ancient Egyptians painted their houses white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors to keep the insects outside.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the
a) Nile b) desert c) schools d) temples
- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the
a) pyramids b) beds c) houses d) windows

Answer the following questions:

- What did Ancient Egyptians use papyrus for?
- What's the general idea of the text?



Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Ancient Egyptian Homes" using the following guiding elements:

5

mud bricks – reed mats

Assess your progress

★★★★★

STUDY

Lessons 5 & 6

Writing/Project



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Dalida

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Wednesday, 8th November

Unusual homes⁽¹⁾

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like **blogging**⁽²⁾ about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an **architect**⁽³⁾, so she sometimes takes me to see some **brilliant**⁽⁴⁾ places. It's really awesome!

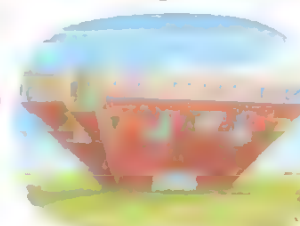
I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old **farmhouse**⁽⁵⁾ which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it **fits in**⁽⁶⁾ very well with the local **landscape**⁽⁷⁾, which is farms and fields. It is also very **ecological**⁽⁸⁾ because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😊

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

Upside down house in the Netherlands



- منازل غير عادية
- التدوين
- مهندس معماري
- رائع
- منزل ريفي
- يلائم
- مناظر طبيعية
- يؤي



Definitions

blogging

التدوين

to write about something in an online blog

للكتاب عن شيء ما في مدونة عبر الإنترنت



ecological

بيئي

related to living things and their environments

تتعلق بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتها



Parents' tips

Help your child recognize the form of a blog.

ساعد طفلك في التعرف على شكل المدونة.

الترجمة:

منازل غير عادية

أهلاً! اسمي داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.

أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع ممتع للغاية بالنسبة لي لأن أمي مهندسة معمارية، لذلك تأخذني أحياناً لرؤية بعض الأماكن الرائعة. إنه رائع جداً! لقد وجدت هذا المنزل غير العادي في هولندا عبر الإنترنت - وكانت قمته للأسفل! إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم يغيره الناس لجعله حديثاً. يعمل المنزل بشكل جيد للغاية لأن جميع النوافذ في الأعلى، وبالتالي تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيداً مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية، وهي المزارع والحقول. كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. ذاك لطيف جداً! ما رأيك في ذلك؟ هل يعجبك ذلك؟



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps of writing a blog خطوات كتابة المدونة

- 1 Write about something you like and enjoy. اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.
- 2 Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like 'awesome' and 'cool'. اكتب لقرائك كما لو أنك تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات مثل "it's / I'm" وكلمات مثل "رائع ولطيف".
- 3 Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 😊 😄 😍 🥰 استخدم علامات التعجب (!) والوجوه الضاحكة.
- 4 Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs. أبدى رأيك ودع قراءك يبدون آراءهم.
- 5 Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد من أن هجائك صحيح.

• Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting.

استخدام الصفات في المدونة يجعلها ممتعة أكثر.

funny	مضحك	awful	قيح
awesome	مدهش	annoying	مزعج
brilliant	ذكي	boring	ممل
cool	رائع		
friendly	ودود		
interesting	ممتع		

PRACTICE



Lessons 5 & 6

14

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- | | |
|--|--|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Dalida likes blogging ... 2 My mom is an architect, ... 3 There is an unusual house in the Netherlands, ... 4 "Blogging" is to write about something ... 5 "Ecological" means relating to ... | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. () in an online blog. b. () living things and their environments. c. () about different things. d. () it's upside down. e. () It's a city. f. () she takes me to some brilliant places. |
|--|--|

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 blogging – I – different – things – about – like.

- 2 is – upside down – Netherlands – in – the – house – the.

- 3 is – that – Why – house – ecological?

- 4 mom – architect – My – an – is

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Unusual homes" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

Where is it?
Why is it unusual?

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
- (2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child write a paragraph correctly.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the steps of writing a blog correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على خطوات كتابة المدونة بطريقة صحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة بطريقة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 5 & 6



Listening

12

4

1 Listen and complete:

- Dalida likes about different things.
- This week she's writing about homes.
- Dalida's mom is an
- She found an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's down!



Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

There is an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The upside down house is in
a) America b) England c) Egypt d) the Netherlands
- Upside down houses get lots of
a) water b) light c) moon d) electricity

Answer the following questions:

- Why do people like the upside down house?
- What makes this house ecological?



Writing

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- The house is in the netherlands
.....
- it is an old farmhouse
.....



Assess your progress

★★★★★

100%

80%

60%

40%

UNIT 7

REVIEW



Vocabulary



elevator



closet



cushion



oven



balcony



armchair



television



shower



bed



bedroom



living room



kitchen



bathroom



Pronunciation

Double vowels

thr
k p
ch se
tr
sh p
s d
qu n

sch l
r l
sp n
r f
p l

Saying 'oo' in words

sch l
sm th
z
f d
n n
sp n
p l

b k
c k
w d
g d
w l

fl d
bl d

Language Focus

The past simple tense

Affirmative:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل

Regular verbs:

I my grandma yesterday.

Irregular verbs:

I fish last week.

Negative:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

I the answer to the teacher's question.

Yes/No Question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Yes,

subject

did.

B: No,

didn't.

A: Did you travel all over Egypt?

B: Yes, I did.

Wh- Question:

A: Question word | did | subject | (inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Subject (الفاعل)

..... التصريف الثاني للفعل

When it?

It yesterday.



Lesson 1

.....	خزانة	.....	مصعد
.....	فرن	.....	وسادة
.....	كرسي ذو ذراعين	.....	بلكونة
.....	دش	.....	تلفاز
.....	غرفة النوم	.....	سرير
.....	مطبخ	.....	غرفة المعيشة
.....	مريح	.....	حمام

Lessons 2 3 4

.....	بوابة	.....	الطوب اللبن
.....	سطح	.....	إناء (حلة)
.....	منطقة للنوم	.....	حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب
.....	طوب	.....	طين
.....	ورق البردي	.....	أثاث
.....	طراز	.....	طابق
.....	يحافظ على	.....	ثلاثة
.....	شجرة	.....	جس
.....	بذرة	.....	خروف
.....	مدرسة	.....	ملكة
.....	ملعقة	.....	أداة
.....	حمام سباحة	.....	سطح
.....	حديقة الحيوان	.....	ناعم
.....	صوف	.....	طعام
.....	كتاب	.....	وقت الظهيرة
.....	حشب	.....	طبّاخ
.....	فيضان	.....	جيد

WRITING TIME

"My new apartment"

more modern – bigger television

I moved into a new apartment with my family. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern. There is more space in the living room so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

"My bedroom"

On the right – armchair

I love my bedroom. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

"Ancient Egyptian homes"

reed mats – storing crops

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

"An unusual home"

- Where is it?
- Why is it unusual?

The upside down house is in the Netherlands. It is actually an old farmhouse. All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 There is a table (in – at – of – on) the middle of the living room.
- 2 He's very (unfair – unkind – unlucky – unfriendly) because he missed the bus.
- 3 He (traveled – travels – is traveling – traveling) all over Egypt last year.
- 4 It (doesn't – isn't – didn't – don't) rain yesterday.

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

4

- 1 They didn't came by airplane. (.....)
- 2 I never sit in that armchair – it's very comfortable. (.....)
- 3 Where do you go last week? (.....)
- 4 His grandma die last year. He was very sad. (.....)

3 Read and rewrite the following:

اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتي:

4

- 1 We carry our heavy bag to the car today. (yesterday)
- 2 I don't arrive on time. (didn't)
- 3 I always spend my holiday at Alexandria. (last holiday)
- 4 I listened to music yesterday. (Did)

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child correct the underlined words.
- (3) Help your child read and rewrite correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

Listening



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 I share a room with my brother. ()
- 2 On the left, there is my bed with a desk next to it. ()
- 3 In the middle of the room, there is an armchair. ()
- 4 There are posters of animals on the wall. ()

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

4

- 1 The in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.
- 2 There were mats to sit and sleep on.
- 3 They used to cover the windows and doors.
- 4 There were large and baskets for storing crops.

Reading

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- | | |
|---|---|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 A. Where do you live? 2 The balcony is fantastic. 3 There is an armchair ... 4 She is very unfriendly. 5 'Unfair' means | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. () something happens without a reason. b. () with two cushions. c. () She never tries to make friends. d. () something that isn't morally right or fair. e. () B: I live in an apartment. f. () What a great view! |
|---|---|

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Fareeda's parents had to move to a new job, so they moved to a closer apartment. Fareeda loves the new apartment because it is bigger than the old one. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern; her mom says it's easier to cook in. There is more space in the living room so they can have a bigger television. They have three bedrooms now. Fareeda shares a room with her sister, Amira, but their bedroom is really big. They have two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The text is mainly about Fareeda's new
a) job b) apartment c) bike d) school
- The underlined word 'share' means to the same room together.
a) eat b) drink c) play d) use

Answer the following questions:

- Why did Fareeda's parents move into a new apartment?
.....
- Summarize the text into two sentences.
.....



Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

- did – How – live in – long – you – apartment – your?
.....
- left, – bed – On – sister's – my – is – the – there.
.....
- and – a scientist – My – animals – loves – uncle – is.
.....
- visited – was – when – five – I – her – house – I.
.....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 2

- what's better about this new apartment
.....
- This week i'm writing about unusual homes
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My new apartment" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

much bigger – easier to cook in

Unit

8

At the doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب



Unit Overview

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادراً على أن:

• listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.

• read a story about an elephant.

• practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.

يتدرب على استخدام "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.

• listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.

يستمع ويفهم محادثة بين دكتور ومريض.

• learn about and use the prefix "un, in, il, and im".

تعلم عن، ويستخدم البادئة "un, in, il, and im".

• understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.

يفهم الفرق بين الأصوات /f/ و /v/.

• write a short paragraph about staying healthy.

يكتب فقرة قصيرة عن البقاء بصحة جيدة.

• plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.

يضع خطة لما يجب وضعه في حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية ويصنع ملصقاً.

Warm up

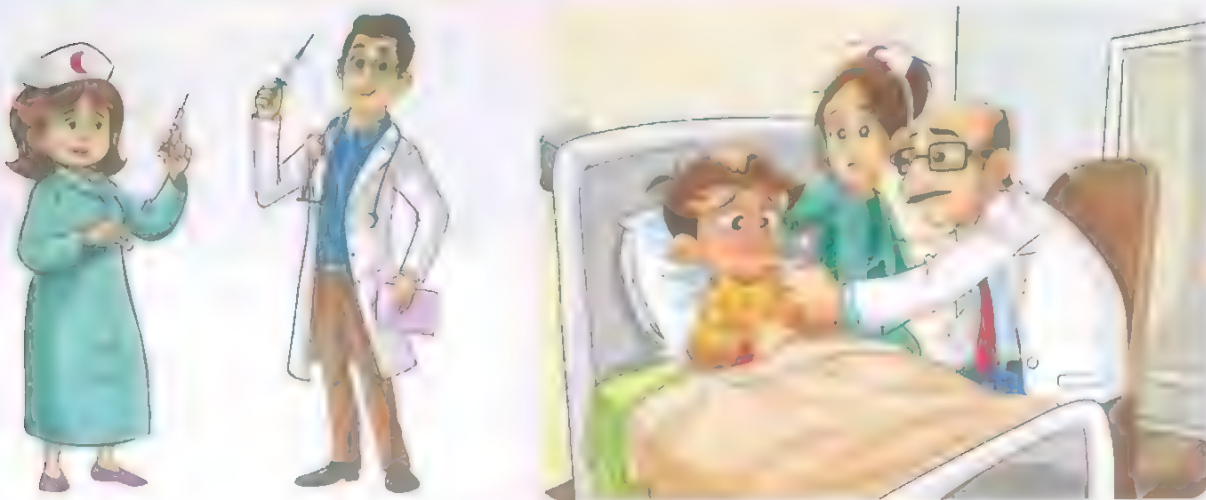
This unit is about different illnesses and how to deal with them and keep healthy. It also deals with the importance of listening to others, and the power of traditional treatments like honey. It ends with training students on writing a short paragraph about staying healthy.

Did you know?

In Ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine to help sick people. They also used honey for healing wounds and burns.



I can find it out!



There are different jobs at the hospital. People can be doctors, nurses, surgeons, and **caregivers**.

يوجد العديد من الوظائف داخل المستشفى. يمكن أن يكون الناس أطباء وممرضات وجراحين ومقدمي الرعاية.

*caregivers

مقدمي الرعاية

STUDY

Lesson 1

They didn't come to the club!

استمع، أسر وفل



Listen, point, and say:

Main Vocabulary



earache

ألم الأذن



toothache

ألم الأسنان



cold

سعال (برد)



cough

سعال



sore throat

التهاب الحلق



backache

ألم الكتف



headache

صداع

Parts of the body that hurt:

أجزاء من الجسم التي تؤلمنا:



ankle

كاحل



back

ظهر



shoulder

كتف

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن الحروف (ach) تنطق /elk/ كما في (toothache, earache).

لاحظ أن حرف (c) يقرأ /k/ كما في كلمة (COUGH).

Vocabulary Check

- ear + ache = earache

- tooth + ache = toothache

club	نادي	problems	مشاكل
cousin	ابن العم أو الخال	aunt	خالة / عمّة
dentist	طبيب أسنان	coach	كابتن / مدرب
stomach	معدة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
stay	يُقي	stayed		hope	يَتمنى	hoped	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt		think	يعتقد	thought	
tell	يخبر	told		feel	يشعر	felt	

have a good day	يقضى يومًا سعيد	football practice	تدريب كرة القدم
be careful	كن حذرًا	stay home	يبقى بالمنزل
feel better	يتحسن	worried about	قلق بشأن
I hope so!	أتمنى ذلك!		

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

يساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

How does Fares feel today?



Mom

Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

أهلاً فارس! هل حظيت بيوم جيد في النادي؟



Fores

Not really. Only five people came to the club today!

إلى حد ما. جاء خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادي اليوم!



Mom

Oh no! Are they OK?

أوه لا ! هل هم بخير؟



Fares

No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

لا، لديهم مشاكل. صديقي طارق أذى كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم في الليلة الماضية. وعمرو لديه



Mom

What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.

ماذا عن ابنة خالتك لمى ؟ قالت خالتك إنها كان لديها ألم بالأسنان.



forces

No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طيبب أسنان. كان اثنان من أصدقائي لديهم برد. أخبرنا



Mom

How do you feel?

كيف تشعر؟

Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

حسنًا، لدى ألم بالظهر وقلق على أصدقائي. أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.

Fares



Mom

I hope so, too!

أتمنى ذلك أيضًا!

Language Functions

Asking if someone's fine:

السؤال عما إذا كان شخص ما بخير:

Are they OK?

e.g. A: Are they OK?

B: No, they have problems.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية QR code ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

PRACTICE



Lesson 1

13

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

My name is Adel. Yesterday, my friend Ramy didn't come to school. He was ill. I asked him if he hurt his shoulder or ankle. He said no. I asked him again if he had a headache. He said no. I asked him if he had an earache. He said no. Then he told me that he had a cough and a sore throat. I told him to drink some milk and honey. He told me that his mom called the doctor. They went to the doctor's and he feels fine today.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ramy didn't come to yesterday.
a) work b) hospital c) school d) home
- Ramy is Adel's
a) brother b) friend c) cousin d) grandfather

Answer the following questions:

- What did Adel tell Ramy to do?
- What is the general idea of the text?

2 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- I think i have a toothache
- what is the matter

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My friend is sick" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

go to school – milk and honey

Parents' tips

- Help your child read the text and answer.
- Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.
- Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.

ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



TEST YOURSELF

on Lesson



Listening

13

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Ahmed doesn't go to school every day.
- 2 Ahmed felt very ill.
- 3 Ahmed hurt his ankle at the football practice.
- 4 Ahmed went to the dentist.

()
()
()
()



Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 A: Did you go to a doctor?
 - 2 Tarek had a sore ...
 - 3 I need some milk ...
 - 4 I think I have a toothache.
 - 5 A: Does she have a headache?

- B**
- a. () throat last week.
 - b. () I have to go to the dentist.
 - c. () B: Yes, she does.
 - d. () B: No, I didn't.
 - e. () and honey for my cough.
 - f. () Yes, he doesn't.



Writing

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

4

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 have - a - headache - Do - you?
- 2 of - friends - my - have - a cold - Two.
- 3 I - milk - some - Can - honey - and - have?
- 4 I - a - toothache - don't - No - have.



Assess your progress

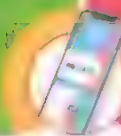
< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

STUDY



Lesson 2

SCIENCE

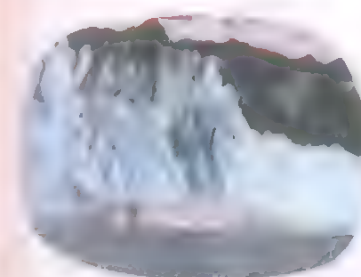


Water

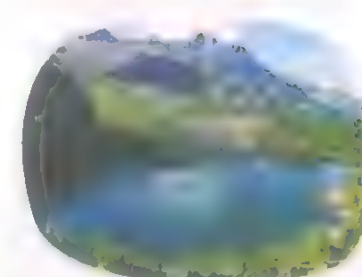


Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



glacier
نهر جليدي



lake
بحيرة



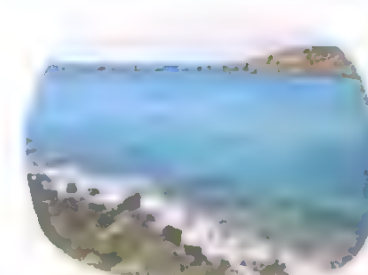
river
نهر



ocean
محيط



stream
مجرى نهر



Mediterranean sea
البحر المتوسط

We should drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day.

يجب أن نشرب ٨ أكواب من الماء العذب يومياً.



Tip!

Salt water can also be called sea water. It is the water in seas and oceans.

يسمى تسليق المياه المالحة بمياه البحر. إنها المياه في البحار والمحيطات.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

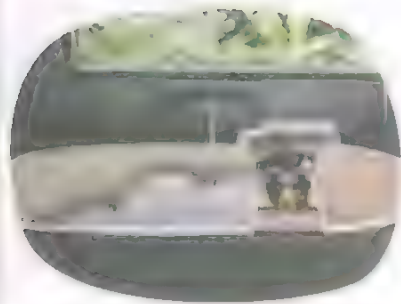
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Look and read:

أنظر واقرأ:

Usages of fresh water

استخدامات المياه العذبة



bathwater

ماء الاستحمام



water for crops

مياه لري المحاصيل



drinking water

مياه الشرب

Usages of salt water

استخدامات المياه المالحة

The Red Sea
البحر الأحمر

Describing The Elephant

Listen, point, and say:

اسمع، أسر وقل:

Main Vocabulary

blind (adj.)	أعمى (كفيف)	trunk	جذع	flexible (adj.)	مرن
tusk	ناب	spear	حرية / رمح	rope	حبل

Further Vocabulary

incredible (adj.)	مدهش	different (adj.)	مختلف	enormous (adj.)	ضخم
smooth (adj.)	أملس / ناعم	dangerous (adj.)	خطير	flat (adj.)	مسطح
hard (adj.)	صلب	moment	لحظة	huge (adj.)	ضخم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
touch	يلمس	discover	يكشف
reach	يصل	turn	يلتف
		discovered	turned

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
meet	يقابل	say	يقول
hear	يسمع	see	يرى
		said	saw

Expressions and Phrases

look like	يشبه	walked over	مشى باتجاه
each of you	كل شخص منكم	stop for a moment	يتوقف للحظة

Definitions

blind	أعمى	can't see	لا يرى
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	the very long nose of an elephant	أنف الفيل الطويلة
tusk	ناب	a very long pointed tooth	سن مدبب طويل للغاية
spear	حرية / رمح	a long pointed stick	عصا طويلة مدببة

Parents' tips

Help your child listen and understand the usages of fresh and salt water after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويفهم استخدامات المياه العذبة والمياه المالحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام QR code.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه بقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام QR code.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

A long time ago, there were six **blind**⁽¹⁾ men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different **idea**⁽²⁾ about what the elephant would look like.



- (1) أعمى (كفيف)
(2) فكرة

The middle

One day, a **local**⁽³⁾ farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.



- (3) محلي
(4) مرن
(5) ناب
(6) حربة / رمح
(7) حبل

The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!"

The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, "No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!"

When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, "You're both wrong! The elephant is long and **flexible**⁽⁴⁾... it's just like a snake!"

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's **tusk**⁽⁵⁾. He said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a **spear**⁽⁶⁾!"

The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!"

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. He's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a **rope**⁽⁷⁾!"

The end

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

Parents' tips

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة:

- منذ زمن بعيد، كان هناك ستة رجال مكفوفين يريدون مقابلة فيل. لقد سمعوا العديد من القصص عن هذه الحيوانات المدهشة، لكن كل رجل لديه فكرة مختلفة عما سيبدو عليه الفيل.
- في أحد الأيام، كان مزارع محلي يسير بجانب الطريق مع فيل كان يعمل في مزرعته. سأل المزارع عما إذا كان الرجال يرغبون في لمس الفيل ليستكشفوا كيف يبدو. كان الرجال متحمسين للغاية ومشوا نحو الحيوان الضخم.
- لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل. قال: «إنه طويل جدًا وقوي جدًا. إنه مثل الجدار!»
- وضع الرجل الثاني ذراعيه حول ساق الفيل الخلفية. قال: «لا أنت مخطئ! إنه مستدير وقوي مثل جذع الشجرة!»
- عندما وضع الرجل الثالث يده على ناب الفيل قال: «أنتم الاثنان مخطئان! الفيل طويل ومرن... إنه مثل الثعبان تمامًا!»
- وضع الرجل الرابع أصابعه على ناب الفيل. قال: «إنه صلب وطويل وأملس. أعتقد أنه خطير مثل الرمح!»
- كان الرجل الخامس طويلًا جدًا جدًا. مد يده ولمس أذن الفيل وقال: «هذا الفيل أملس ومسطح وشكله مثل ورقة الشجر تمامًا!»
- أخيرًا، وضع الرجل السادس يده على ذيل الفيل. قال: «هذا الفيل ليس كحائط، ربح، أو ثعبان. إنه ليس كورقة شجر أو جذع شجرة! هذا الفيل تمامًا كالحبل!»
- أستمع المزارع إلى كل ما قاله الرجال. التفت إليهم وقال: في الحقيقة، كل شيء صحيح! لمس كل واحد منكم جزءًا واحدًا فقط من الفيل. إذا توقفت للحظة، واستمعتم إلى ما تعتقدونه جميعًا، سيمكنكم رؤية شكل الفيل جميعًا.

PRACTICE



Lesson 2

11

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

- 1 We should drink ...
2 The elephant's back leg is ...
3 A tusk is a ...
4 We use fresh water ...
5 Salt water can also be called ...

B

- a. () to water the crops.
b. () bath water.
c. () sea water.
d. () 8 glasses of fresh water a day.
e. () round and strong.
f. () long pointed tooth.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 is - the - men - **What** - special - about?

2 we - drink - water - the - **Can** - sea?

3 six - very - excited - men - **The** - were.

4 drink - fresh - 8 - I - of - water - glasses.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 do you like drinking water

2 which part of the elephant was like a snake

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- 1 They went to the zoo. ()
- 2 He has three brothers. ()
- 3 Their favorite animal is the lion. ()
- 4 Hossam wanted to know how the elephant looks like. ()

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Sami. Yesterday, I read a story called "Describing the elephant". It was about three blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. Each man of them had a different idea about how the elephant would look like. They tried to touch an elephant to discover how it looks like. The first one said, "It's very tall and strong." The second one said, "The elephant is long and flexible." The third one said, "It's hard, long, and smooth." They saw it differently because each one of them touched a different part of the elephant.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The story was about blind men.
a) two b) four c) five d) three
- 2 The underlined word 'blind' means someone who can't
a) draw b) hear c) touch d) see

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Sami do yesterday?
- 4 Why did the three men see the elephant differently?

Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Different types of water" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

- * What can we use fresh water for?
- * Where can we find salt water?

Assess your progress

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشير وقل:

stomachache	ألم في المعدة	playground	ملعب	Bangalore	بنغالور (مدينة في الهند)
Southern India	جنوب الهند	patients	المرضى	crowded (adj.)	مزدحم
instead of	بدلاً من	staff	طاقم العمل		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
treat يعالج	treated	return يعود / يرجع	returned
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
tell يخبر / يقول	told	give يعطي	gave

What is the matter? ما الأمر؟	Don't worry. لا تقلق.
I have a cut on my arm. لدى قطع في ذراعي	put a bandage يضع ضمادة (الاصقة طبية)

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

HOW ARE YOU?



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Ashraf:

Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

أهلاً، يا دكتور. أنا لا أشعر أنني بحالة جيدة.

Doctor:

What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

ماذا بك، يا أشرف؟ هل لديك صداع؟



Ashraf:

No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى صداع.

Doctor:

Do you have a stomachache?

هل لديك ألم في المعدة؟



Ashraf:

No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى ألم في المعدة.

Doctor:

Do you have a toothache?

هل لديك ألم في الأسنان؟



Ashraf:

No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى ألم في الأسنان. أنا عندي .. أنا عندي ...

Doctor:

Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

أوه، عزيزي! لديك نزلة برد. أبق في المنزل، ونم جيداً وتناول هذا الدواء.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code, and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية ال QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

At the doctor's

انظر واقرأ:



Look and read:

A Special Hospital

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten **family members**⁽¹⁾. In India, it



- (1) أفراد العائلة
- (2) قريبهم المريض
- (3) ضمادات
- (4) حقن
- (5) ممرات

is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their **unwell relative**⁽²⁾.

This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change **bandages**⁽³⁾ and others learn how to give **injections**⁽⁴⁾. Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the **corridors**⁽⁵⁾ into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members – and sometimes even the patients – become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

Check point

- 1 Why is the hospital very crowded and busy?
- 2 How do the hospital staff turn the problem into something wonderful?

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- في مستشفى في بنغالور، مدينة في جنوب الهند، هنالك الكثير من المرضى. يعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد.
- مع كل مريض هناك حوالي عشرة أفراد من العائلة. في الهند ليس من المألوف/ العادي أن يذهب شخص إلى المستشفى وحده/ بمفرده. عادة ما تذهب العائلة مع قريبهم المريض.
- هذا يعني أن المستشفى غالباً ما يكون مزدحماً ومشغولاً للغاية. ولكن بدلاً من أخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى، فريق العاملين بالمستشفى يفعلون شيئاً مثيراً. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شيء رائع. لديهم فصول لتعليم العائلة كيفية رعاية الشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيفية تغيير الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.
- بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفو المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية. تصبح الممرضات معلمات وأفراد العائلة – وأحياناً حتى المرضى يصبحون طلاباً. هذا لا يساعد فقط العاملين بالمستشفى، ولكنه أيضاً يساعد العائلات على رعاية قريبهم عند عودته إلى البيت. يعرف الموظفون أن الدروس تعمل لأنه ليس كثيراً من المرضى يعودون إلى المستشفى الآن.

Language Focus



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقُل:

We use "have" to talk about illnesses:

نستخدم "لدي" للحديث عن الأمراض:

Affirmative

I/ You/ We/ They / فاعل جمع + have + a/an illness (مرض).

e.g.



I have a headache.

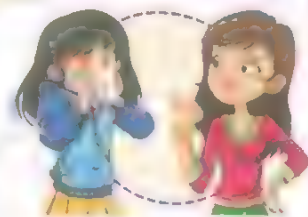
أنا لدي صداع.

He/ She/ It / فاعل مفرد + has + a/an illness (مرض).

e.g.

Hana has a cold.

هنا لديها برد.



Yes/ No Question:

السؤال بهل:

A: Do / Does + subject + have + a/an illness (مرض)?

B: Yes,

do / does.

B: No,

don't / doesn't.

subject

e.g.



A: Does she have a toothache?

هل لديها ألم بالأسنان؟

B: No, she doesn't.

لا، ليس لديها ألم بالأسنان.

Parents' tips

Help your child use "have" to talk about illness in the present correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم "لدي" للحديث عن المرض في المضارع بطريقة صحيحة.

Negative:

I/ You/ We/ They

don't

He/ She/ It

doesn't

have + a/an illness.

e.g.



I don't have a sore throat.

ليس لدي التهاب في الحلق.

Prefix un-

We can add the prefix **un-** to make the opposite of an adjective.

نضيف المقطع (un-) لتكون المضاد من الصفة.

un + صفة

e.g.

usual

عادي

unusual

غير عادي

well

بخير

unwell

ليس بخير

- We add **ir-**, **il-**, and **im-** to some adjectives.

- نضيف **ir-**, **il-**, **im-** لبعض الصفات:

Prefix

Use

Root word

Opposite word

ir

when the word begins with r

responsible

irresponsible

il

when the word begins with l

legal

illegal

im

when the word begins with m or p

possible

impossible

moral

immoral

Check point

Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصح ما تحته خط:

1 Talking on your cell phone while driving is legal.

2 I won the game. I feel unhappy.

3 It's possible to jump that high, it's very dangerous.

Parents' tips

Help your child use the prefix correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم البادئة بطريقة صحيحة.

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 Ahmed (has – does – have – is) a toothache.
- 2 The hospital staff turn the corridors of the hospital into (parks – classrooms – kitchens – gardens).
- 3 You are a very (irresponsible – illegal – impossible – responsible) person. You take care of your little brother.
- 4 (Do – Done – Does – Doesn't) you have a stomachache?

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 have – Do – a – Adel – stomachache, – you?
- 2 many – the – There – patients – are – hospital – in.
- 3 is – very – hospital – busy – and – The – crowded.
- 4 medicine – this – home – and – take – Stay.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 What's the matter, ashraf
- 2 i have a headache

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

Listening

14

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Bangalore is a city in western India. ()
- 2 The hospital is very crowded and busy. ()
- 3 The hospital teaches strangers how to look after a sick person. ()
- 4 The teachers teach patients' relatives how to give injections and change bandages. ()

Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- | | |
|---|---|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 He has a cold. 2 The hospitals are crowded and ... 3 A: Do you have a headache? 4 Ola is sad. 5 The hospital treats patients ... | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. () busy in Bangalore. b. () He's unwell. c. () from all over the country. d. () It's unusual. e. () B: No, I don't. I have a toothache. f. () She's unhappy. |
|---|---|

Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A visit to the hospital" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

many patients - change bandages

Assess your progress

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

The Power of Honey



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

perhaps	ربما / يمكن	treatment	علاج	injuries	إصابات
illnesses	أمراض	wounds	جروح	recently	حديثًا (مؤخرًا)
bacteria	بكتيريا	substance	مادة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
enjoy يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	heal يشفي	healed
treat يعالج	treated	kill يقتل	killed
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
know يعرف	knew	cut يقطع / يجرع	cut

Definitions

treatment	علاج	medical care to help you get better	الرعاية الطبية لمساعدتك على التحسن
wound	جرح	an injury that damages your skin	إصابة تلتف جلدك
bacteria	بكتيريا	very small things that can make you ill	أشياء صغيرة جدًا تصيبك بالمرض
heal	يشفي	to get better	أن تصبح أفضل

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Health Problems

مشاكل صحية



sore throat
التهاب الحلق



a cut knee
جرح بالركبة



sunburn
حرق شمسي



headache
صداع

Solution

الحل



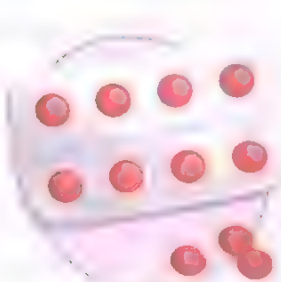
honey and lemon
عسل وليمون



bandage
ضمادة



sunscreen
كريم واقٍ من الشمس



pills
أدوية / حبوب

Parents' tips

Help your child identify some health problems and solutions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على بعض المشاكل الصحية والحلول بطريقة صحيحة.



Look and read:

انظر و اقرأ:

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a **treatment⁽¹⁾** for some **injuries⁽²⁾** and illnesses.



- | | |
|-----|---------|
| (1) | علاج |
| (2) | إصابات |
| (3) | جروح |
| (4) | بكتيريا |

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat **wounds³** by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill **bacteria⁽⁴⁾**. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- هل تحب العسل؟ ربما تستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار. أو ربما تستمتع به في البسبوسة الحلوة؟ لكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس طعامًا فقط؟ كما أنه يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.
- في بعض البلدان، استخدم الأطباء العسل لألاف السنين. تم استخدامه لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالي 5000 سنة. في الآونة الأخيرة، حاول العلماء معرفة سبب وجود العسل بالتحديد لماذا العسل جيد جدًا في شفاء الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.
- يعلم العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي على الأشياء التي يمكن أن تساعد في قتل البكتيريا. وهذا يساعد على شفاء الجروح بشكل أسرع. يجب أن تكون حذرا، ومع ذلك العسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل الأطباء الخاص وهو آمن للاستخدام كعلاج. لذا، إذا كان لديك وعاء من العسل في خزانةك، يمكنك مزجه مع الحليب لجعل كحكك / سعالك أفضل، لكن لا تضعه على جرح بالركبة!

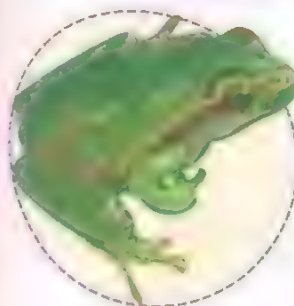
Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

/f/



frog

ضفدع



scarf

وشاح / كوفية



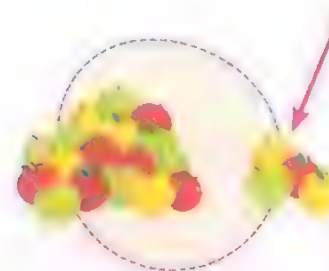
fruit

فاكهة



ferry

معدية



few

فيس



safe

آمن



live

حياة



fan

مروحة



leaf

ورقة سحر



fast

سريع



line

خيط

/v/



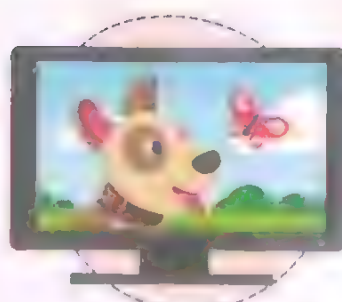
vet

طبيب بيطري



vegetables

حاصلات



television

تلفاز



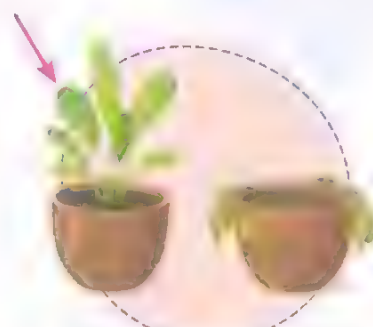
van

شاحنة صغيرة



leave

مغادر



live

حي / يعيش



very

جداً



view

مظر



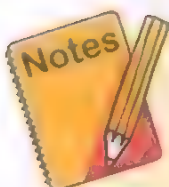
save

يوفر



lovely

جميل



To make the /f/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but don't use your voice.

لعمل الصوت /f/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن لا تستخدم صوتك!

To make the /v/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but do use your voice!

لعمل الصوت /v/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن استخدم صوتك!

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words with /f/ and /v/ sounds using the QR code and let him/her say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات الـ /f/ و /v/ باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

Math

A bar chart



Look, read, and notice:

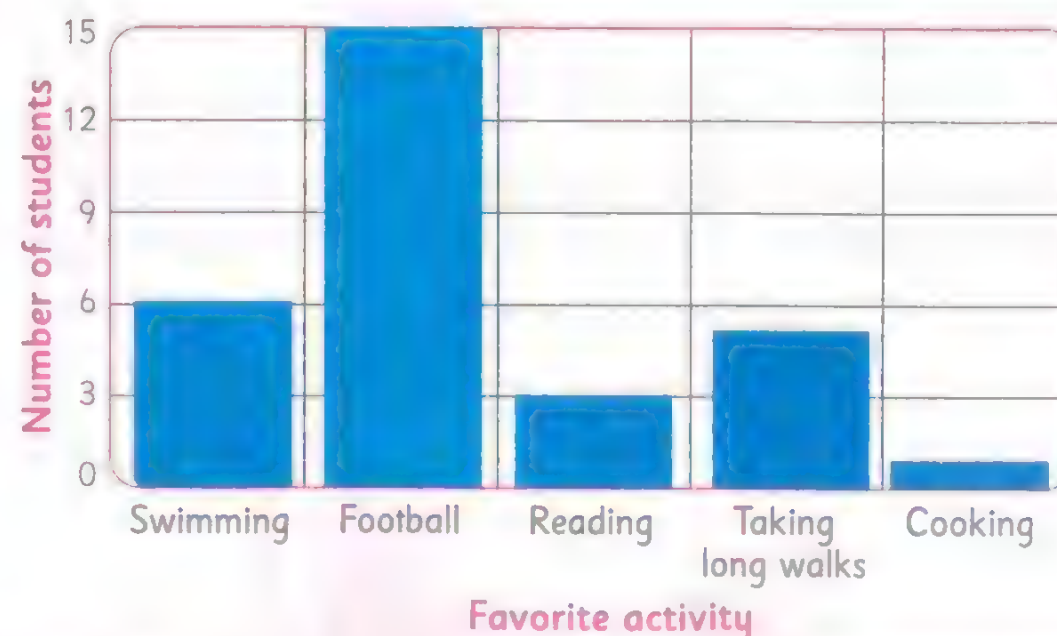
أنظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

A bar chart is a way of showing information.

الرسم البياني هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

Favorite activity	Number of students
Swimming	6 students
Football	15 students
Reading	3 students
Taking long walks	5 students
Cooking	1 student



Parents' tips

Help your child learn how to make a bar chart.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيفية عمل الرسم البياني.

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 Some types of honey ...
 - 2 "Heal" means ...
 - 3 Don't put honey ...
 - 4 A bar chart is ...
 - 5 Honey was first used ...

- B**
- a. () a way of showing information.
 - b. () to treat wounds.
 - c. () on your cut knee.
 - d. () can kill bacteria.
 - e. () to make someone feel ill.
 - f. () to get better.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 is – ferry – **The** – fast – very.
- 2 a bandage – your – cut – knee – **Put** – on.
- 3 good – for – **Honey** – wounds – healing – is.
- 4 my – last – week – **I** – cut – knee.

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Importance of honey" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

treat wounds – kill bacteria

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
- (2) Help your child reorder the words to write correct sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child write a paragraph correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

Listening

12

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Eman is a doctor and she works in a hospital. ()
- 2 Honey is only food. ()
- 3 Honey has been used by doctors for hundreds of years. ()
- 4 Eman uses only doctors' special honey. ()

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

I'm Asmaa. I'm a nurse. I work in a hospital. Yesterday, I taught my students some solutions to help their sick relatives. If a person has a sore throat, make for him honey and lemon. If someone is coughing, make for him honey and milk because honey can help treat illnesses. If a person has a cut knee, put a bandage on the cut. I enjoy teaching children and helping people.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Asmaa is a
a) doctor b) firefighter c) nurse d) teacher
- 2 She taught the students some
a) songs b) solutions c) words d) problems

4 Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do you do if you have a sore throat?
- 4 What is the main idea of the text?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 that's a very big ferry
- 2 do you like honey

Assess your progress

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%



Writing



Look and read:

أنظر واقرأ:

My **presentation**⁽¹⁾ today is about **staying healthy**⁽²⁾. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a **balanced diet**⁽³⁾. There are lots of other things that we can do to **look after**⁽⁴⁾ our health.



You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good **way**⁽⁵⁾ to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed **early**⁽⁶⁾. It's important to get **enough**⁽⁷⁾ sleep. **Experts**⁽⁸⁾ think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition⁽⁹⁾ to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to **focus**⁽¹⁰⁾ on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

- | | |
|------|-------------------|
| (1) | عرض تقديمي |
| (2) | البقاء بصحة جيدة |
| (3) | نظام غذائي متوازن |
| (4) | يعتني بـ |
| (5) | طريقة |
| (6) | مبكراً |
| (7) | كافي |
| (8) | خبراء |
| (9) | بالإضافة |
| (10) | يركز |

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

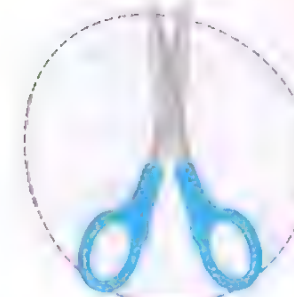
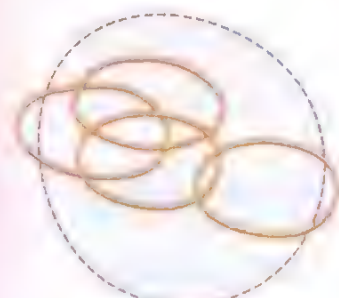
- عرض التقديمي اليوم يتعلق بالبقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم جدًا أن تحافظ على تحريك جسمك. لعب الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء هو طريقة جيدة للتمرين.
- يجب عليك القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم أن تحصل على ما يكفي من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثمان إلى تسع ساعات كل ليلة.
- شيء آخر يمكنك القيام به هو الذهاب إلى الفراش/السريير مبكرًا. من المهم أن تحصل على ما يكفي من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثمان إلى تسع ساعات كل ليلة.
- بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو قضاء الوقت مع أصدقائك. ليس جسمك فقط الذي تحتاج أن تبقيه بصحة جيدة. يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على أن تكون سعيدًا أيضًا. قضاء الوقت مع العائلة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

Project



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

bandages
ضماداتsunscreen
كريم واقٍ من الشمسscissors
مقصinsect bite cream
كريم لدغة الحشراتcleansing wipes
مناديل للتطهيرmedical gloves
قفازات طبيةrubber bands
أربطة مطاطيةsafety pins
دبابيس الأمانsoap
صابون

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك في التعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 I have a presentation today ...
 - 2 It's important to ...
 - 3 Experts think you should get ...
 - 4 Bandages are useful ...
 - 5 You should make time to focus ...

- B**
- a. () eat healthy food.
 - b. () between eight and nine hours of sleep.
 - c. () about staying healthy.
 - d. () on being happy.
 - e. () junk food.
 - f. () in the first-aid kit.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 have – a balanced – to – It's – important – diet.
- 2 do – you – to – What – stay – do – healthy?
- 3 bed – should – go – early – You – to.
- 4 sports – way – Playing – exercise – to – is – a good.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 take bandages in case someone cuts his knee
- 2 it's really important to eat healthy food

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
- (2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

Listening

15

4

استمع وأكمل:

1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Salma is having a today.
- 2 Salma's presentation is about staying
- 3 Mazen thinks it's important to have a diet.
- 4 Salma says that getting enough is also important.

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

My name is Omar. My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Another thing you can do is go to bed early.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar's presentation is about staying
a) healthy b) sick c) ill d) unhealthy
- 2 It's really important to eat food.
a) junk b) fast c) healthy d) unhealthy

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the good way to exercise?
- 4 What are the things we can do to look after our health? (Write two things).

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Staying healthy" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

plenty of water – exercise everyday

Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

50 - 54%

55 - 59%

60 - 64%

Vocabulary



earache toothache cold



cough sore throat backache headache

Parts of the body that hurt:



ankle back shoulder

Pronunciation



veg scar fruit berry



leg sore lie an



leg ast ine



vegetables television an leave



lie very view save lonely

Language Focus

The use of "have"

We use "have" in the present form to talk about illness:

Affirmative

I/ You/ We/ They + have + a/an illness.



I have a headache.

He/ She/ It + is + a/an illness.



Hana has a cold.



Question

A: Do / Does + subject + have + a/an illness (مرض)?

B: Yes,

subject

do / does.

B: No,

don't / doesn't.



A: Does she have a toothache?

B: No, she doesn't.

Prefix un-

We can add the prefix **un-** to make the opposite of an adjective.



usual

unusual

- We add **ir-**, **il-**, and **im-** to some adjectives.



Prefix	Use	Root word	Opposite word
ir	when the word begins with r	responsible	irresponsible
il	when the word begins with l	legal	illegal
im	when the word begins with p	possible	impossible
		moral	immoral

Lesson 1

ظهر	كاحل
إنفلونزا/ برد	صداع
ألم الأذن	كتف
كحة	ألم الأسنان
التهاب الحلق	ألم بالظهر

Lesson 2

بحيرة	نهر جليدي
محيط	مياه عذبة
مجرى نهر	نهر
ناب	أعمى
حربة/ رمح	البحر المتوسط

Lesson 3

ورقة شجر	وشاح/ كوفية
قليل	ضفدع
طبيب بيطري	فاكهة
تلفاز	منظر
مروحة	أمن
خضراوات	جدا
حياة	شاحنة صغيرة
يغادر	معدية
حي/ يعيش	يوفر

WRITING TIME

"Day at the club"

five friends – football practice

Only five people came to the club last night. Some of them weren't feeling well. Adel hurt his ankle at a football practice last night. Doha had an earache from swimming. I have a backache, too.

"Elephants"

- * How big are the elephants?
- * How do elephants' ears look like?

Elephants are enormous, strong, and special animals. Elephants' sides are very tall and they are like big strong walls. Elephants' legs are round and strong like tree trunks. Elephants' ears are smooth and flat like a leaf. Elephants' tusks are long, hard, and smooth just like dangerous spears. Elephants' trunks are long and flexible like a snake. Elephants' tails are just like a rope.

"Water"

take showers – sea water

Water is very important especially fresh water. We can't live without fresh water. We drink fresh water; we cook with fresh water and we water the crops with fresh water. We also take showers with fresh water. Fresh water is found in rivers, lakes, streams, and glaciers. There is also salt water that we also call it sea water. We can't drink salt water. It's dangerous to drink salt water. It's bad for the stomach.

"The usage of honey"

- * Do you like honey?
- * What do you use honey for?

I really like honey. I like to drink honey and milk, and sometimes honey and lemon when I cough, or when I have a sore throat. Some doctors use honey as a treatment for wounds. Doctors use a special kind of honey. Only doctors can use this special honey. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria and heal wounds.

PRACTICE

More on Grammar

12

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 Ola (is – has – have – did) a toothache.
- 2 Amira is feeling (unwell – fine – good – well). She has a headache.
- 3 (Doing – Are – Do – Does) you have an earache?
- 4 He's crying. He's (excited – unhappy – moral – responsible).

2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح ما تحته خط:

4

- 1 Who's the matter?
- 2 It's possible for elephants to fly.
- 3 She have a toothache.
- 4 Does you have a cut knee?

3 Read and rewrite the following:

اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتي:

4

- 1 Does she have a stomachache? (they)
- 2 Do you have a backache? (No,)
- 3 I have a toothache. (She)
- 4 It's dangerous to walk in the middle of the road. (unsafe)

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child correct the underlined words.
- (3) Help your child rewrite the given sentences or questions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.

ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التي تحته خط.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة بطريقة صحيحة.



Listening



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Malek is a doctor in a hospital in India. ()
- 2 The hospital is empty. ()
- 3 The doctors and nurses teach the patients' children. ()
- 4 They teach patients' relatives how to change bandages and to give injections. ()

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

4

- 1 Mai feels very
- 2 Mai doesn't have a
- 3 She has a throat.
- 4 She will drink and lemon.



Reading

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 A hospital in Bangalore, India turns ...
 - 2 "Bacteria" are ...
 - 3 The elephant's ear is smooth, ...
 - 4 Asmaa has ...
 - 5 Salt water can also be called ...

- B**
- a. () a stomachache.
 - b. () sea water.
 - c. () the corridors into classrooms.
 - d. () fresh water.
 - e. () very small things that can make you ill.
 - f. () and flat, and shaped like a leaf.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

We can't live without water. Water is very important. There are lots of places where we can find fresh water. We can find fresh water in rivers, lakes, streams, and glaciers. We use fresh water to drink, to water the crops, to take baths, and to cook food. Fresh water is important because we can't drink salt water. Salt water is also called sea water. Salt water is the water in seas and oceans. We swim in seas and oceans.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We can't without water.
a) breathe b) leave c) live d) left
- 2 The text is about
a) water b) honey c) illnesses d) salt

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where can we find fresh water?
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 has – earache – an – Sama – and – a – toothache.
.....
- 2 in – throw – illegal – It's – trash – the – to – rivers.
.....
- 3 they – Do – a – stomachache – have?
.....
- 4 is – friends – Spending – with – time – healthy.
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:

2

- 1 do you have an earache
.....
- 2 amira has a sore throat
.....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "The power of honey" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

treatment for some injuries – kill bacteria

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل



Unit Overview

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen, read, research, and write about animals.
- listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.
- learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.
- write an email about an unusual animal.
- research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

• بهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادراً على ان:

- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الحيوانات.
- يستمع ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية.
- تعلم كيف يقول أصوات /w/ و /v/.
- كتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا عن حيوان غير عادي.

Warm up



This unit is about different wildlife animals around the world. It's about the water cycle and the different processes that water goes through. It is also about the Ancient Egyptian society.

تتناول هذه الوحدة حيوانات برية مختلفة حول العالم. نتحدث عن دورة المياه، والعمليات المختلفة التي يمر بها المياه. إنها أيضًا عن المجتمع المصري القديم.

Did you know?

Flamingos eat with their heads upside down. They use their tongue to catch their food. Flamingos are famous for their bright pink feathers, tall legs, and S-shaped necks.



تأكل طيور النحام (طيور الفلامنجو) ورؤوسها رأسًا على عقب. إنها تستخدم أسننتها لالتقاط الطعام. تشتهر طيور النحام بريشها الوردي الفاتح وأرجلها الطويلة ورقابها على شكل حرف S.

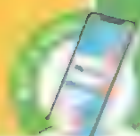
I can find it out!

Egypt is home to many animals such as camels, donkeys, horses, sheep, and goats as well as gazelles, desert lynxes, and desert foxes that mainly live in the desert areas.



desert lynxes

تعد مصر موطنًا للعديد من الحيوانات مثل الجمال والحمير والخيول والاعنام والماعز وكذلك العرلان ووشق الصحراء وتغالب الصحراء التي تعيش بشكل أساسي في المناطق الصحراوية.



Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

	kangaroo	I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. أنا أعيش في أستراليا. أقفز على قدمين.
	panda باندا	I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. أنا أعيش في الصين. أنا أكل الخيزران. أنا كبير، ولوني أسود وأبيض.
	bat	I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. أطير في الليل. أنا م رأساً على عقب على الأشجار.
	lion	I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong. أنا أعيش في إفريقيا. أنا قطّة كبيرة جداً. أنا قوي جداً.
	penguin	I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. أنا أعيش على الجليد والثلج. أنا أسود وأبيض. أنا أستطيع السباحة، لكنني لا أستطيع الطيران.
	dolphin	I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. أنا ودود جداً. أنا أسبح في مجموعة مع عائلتي في المحيط.
	snail	I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. أنا أعيش في الحديقة. لدي صدفة. ليس لدي أرجل أو أذرع.
	parrot	I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. أنا طائر. أنا جميل جداً وملون. أنا أعيش في الغابة الاستوائية.

wildlife	الحياة البرية	shell	صدفة	Australia	أستراليا
rainforest	الغابة الاستوائية	Africa	إفريقيا	strong (adj.)	قوي
friendly (adj.)	ودود	ocean	محيط	China	الصين
bamboo	نبات الخيزران	wonderful	رائع	awesome	رائع
pouch	جراب	sweet (adj.)	لطيف	fridge	ثلاجة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
stay	يبقى / يمكث	repeat	يكرر
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
can	يستطيع	sit	يجلس
feed	يطعم	hide	يختبئ

Exercises and Projects

at night	في الليل	sleep upside down	ينام رأساً على عقب
day out	يوم بالخارج	do a project on	يقوم بعمل بمشروع عن



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (o) في كلمة (ocean) ينطق () (ش).

Vocabulary Check

لاحظ أن (favorite) قد تأتي اسماً مثل: My favorites were the parrots.

وقد تأتي (favorite) صفة مثل: He saw his favorite birds.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ و تبادل الأدوار:

Where did Ramez go yesterday?



Hi! I had a **wonderful** day out yesterday with my family.

أهلاً! أنا قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج بالأمس مع عائلتي.

Where did you go?

Ayman



Ramez

I went to the new **wildlife park** – it was awesome!

ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية الجديدة - كانت رائعة!

What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

ماذا رأيت؟ هل تمكنت من الاقتراب من الأسود؟

Ayman



No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's **pouch** – it's so sweet!

لا، بقينا في السيارة. لكن يمكننا رؤيتها من خلال الأشجار. كان الكنغر مثيراً للاهتمام أيضاً. عندما يكون صغيراً، يمكنها

الجلوس داخل جراب أمهاتها - إنها لطيفة جداً!

Ayman



What birds did you see?

ما الطيور التي رأيتها؟



Ramez

Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

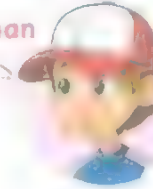
كثيراً، لكن المفضلة لدى كانت السعافات. كانت جميلة جداً ويمكنها التحدث! قلنا لها بعض الكلمات ليكرروها!



What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

ماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب البرد؟ هل رأيت أيًا منها؟

Ayman



Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins – they can swim so well and they look so cool!

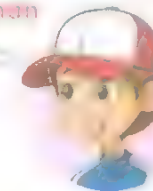
نعم، البطاريق! كانت في مكان خاص بالداخل. كان المكان بارداً مثل الثلاجة. أطعمناها بعض الأسماك! أنا أحب البطاريق - يمكن أن تسبح جيداً وتبدو رائعة جداً!



Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

رائع! هل كان هناك أي شيء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع ذلك؟

Ayman



Ramez

The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

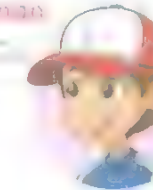
الخفافيش. أنا أقوم بعمل مشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقاً رؤيتها! لكنها كانت جميعاً تختبئ ولم أستطع رؤيتها في الظلام!



Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now – that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

أوه حسناً، يبدو الأمر رائعاً! يجب أن أطعم أرنبى الآن - هذه هي الحياة البرية التي سأراها اليوم!

Ayman



Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 Snails have shells.
 - 2 Dolphins are friendly.
 - 3 Bats fly at night.
 - 4 A: Where did you go?
 - 5 We fed the penguins ...

- B**
- a. () they sleep upside down on trees.
 - b. () I went to the new wildlife park.
 - c. () They don't have legs or arms.
 - d. () some fish.
 - e. () They swim in a group in the ocean.
 - f. () They eat bamboo.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 near – go – you – lions – Could – the?
.....
- 2 can – but – Penguins – fly, – can't – they – swim.
.....
- 3 go – Where – yesterday – Ramez – did?
.....
- 4 were – in – place – The penguins – a special – inside.
.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 What did you see ramez?
.....
- 2 i'm doing a project on bats at school
.....

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
- (2) Help your child reorder the words to make correct sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

استمع وأكمل:

4



1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Ramez went to the park.
- 2 The kangaroos were
- 3 Ramez's favorite birds are the
- 4 The were in a special place.



2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. He had a wonderful day out with his family. They stayed in the car. They could see the lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Ramez's favorite birds were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! The penguins were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. They fed them some fish. Penguins can swim so well and they look so cool.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The text is about Ramez's family's visit to the
a) square b) bank c) theater d) wildlife park
- 2 The underlined word "pouch" means a small place inside the body of the
a) parrot b) monkey c) penguin d) kangaroo

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What were Ramez's favorite birds?
- 4 Where were the penguins?



5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Wildlife animals" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

- How did you go to the wildlife park?
- What did you see there?



Lesson 2

What could you do?

 Listen, point, and say:

Expressing ability and inability:

1 **can / can't**

Usage:

When we talk about something we are or aren't able to do in the present, we use (can) or (can't).

عندما نتحدث عن شيء نستطيع أو لا نستطيع القيام به في الوقت الحاضر، فإننا نستخدم (can) أو (can't).

Form:

Subject + **can/can't** + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g.



I **can** play basketball.

e.g.

Penguins **can't** fly.

لا تستطيع البطاريق أن تطير.



Question:

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Can).

لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ Can.

A: **Can** + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject

can.

can't.

e.g.



A: Can you play tennis?

B: Yes, I can.

2 A: Can she make a cake?

B: No, she can't.



Note

We use "can" or "can't" with the infinitive without "to".

نستخدم "can" أو "can't" مع مصدر الفعل بدون "to".

2 could / couldn't

Usage:

When we talk about something we were or weren't able to do in the past, we use (could) or (couldn't).

عندما نتحدث عن شيء كنا قادرين أو غير قادرين على القيام به في الماضي، فإننا نستخدم could أو couldn't.

Form:

Subject + **could/couldn't** + (inf.)

e.g.



When I was little, I **could** sit on my dad's knee.

عندما كنت صغيرة، كان بإمكانني الجلوس على ركة والدي.

e.g.



I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

لم أستطع ركوب الأتوبيس فاضطرت للمشي.

Question:

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Could).

لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ "Could".

A: **Could** + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject

could.

couldn't.

e.g.



A: **Could** he **say** when he was six months old?

B: Yes, he could say "mama" and "dada!"

A: **Could** you **ride** a bike when you were three?

B: No, I couldn't.



Check point

Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 When I was little, I (can – are – couldn't – can't) run fast.
- 2 Sorry, I (can – can't – could – am) help you with your homework. I'm busy now.
- 3 A: Could you (play – playing – played – plays) chess when you were a child?
B: Yes, I could.

Vocabulary Check

لاحظ أن أسماء اللغات والبلدان تبدأ بحرف كبير "capital letter".

(France / French – Italy / Italian – Germany / German – England / English)

The travelers and the tree

by Aesop

Main Vocabulary

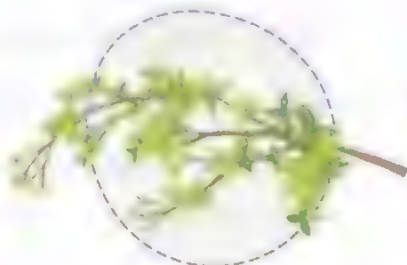


Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



trunk of a tree
جذع شجرة



a branch of a tree
فرع شجرة



nuts



exhausted

travelers	مسافرون	dictionary	قاموس
fable	أسطورة	dry	جاف
wide (adj.)	واسع / عريض	shelter	ملجأ
rest	راحة	area	منطقة
traders	تجار	shade	ظل
probably	ربما / من المحتمل	correct (adj.)	صحيح
unkind (adj.)	غير طيب / غير عطوف	humans	البشر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
rest	يستريح	rested	ينقذ
save	يُنقذ	saved	يُنقذ
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	يشعر
feel	يشعر	felt	يشعر

move across	يتحرك عبر	fell asleep	نام
neither of them	لا أحد منهم	one of them	أحدهما
keep ... cool	يحافظ على برودة (شيء)	feel sorry	يشعر بالأسف
give value	يقدر / يعطي قيمة		

Definitions

breeze

نسيم

A breeze is a little wind.

النسيم هو ريح خفيفة.

useless

عديم الفائدة

When something is useless, we can't use it.

عندما يكون هناك شيء عديم الفائدة ، فلا يمكننا استخدامه.

ungrateful

جاحد (غير شكور)

When someone is ungrateful, they don't thank others for doing something good.

عندما يكون شخص ما جاحداً (غير شكور)، فإنه لا يشكر الآخرين على فعلهم الجيد.

comfortable

مريح

When something is comfortable, it's nice to sit on or wear.

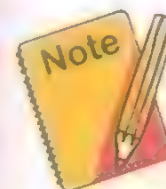
عندما يكون هناك شيء ما مريح ، فمن الجيد الجلوس عليه أو ارتداؤه.

meeting point

نقطة التقاء

is somewhere where people meet.

هو مكان حيث يتقابل الأشخاص.



Note

A moral is the **value** you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.

الحلق (المغزى) هو القيمة التي تتعلمها من قصة تقرأها أو من موقف في الحياة.

e.g. The moral of the story is that it's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

الدرس الأخلاقي «المغزى» من القصة هو أنه من المهم إعطاء قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة في حياتنا.



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حروف (tion) في كلمة (dictionary) تنطق /tʃən/ (ش).

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (x) في كلمة (exhausted) ينطق /gz/ (جز) كما أن حرف الـ (h) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (th) في كلمة (neither) ينطقان /ð/ (ذ).

Vocabulary Check

• لاحظ استخدام (un) و (less) تعطي العكس من الكلمة:

عديم الفائدة useless / مفيد useful - جاحد (غير شكور) ungrateful / شكور grateful



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shade and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.



- (1) جذع
(2) فروع
(3) ملجأ
(4) يستريح

The middle

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were sleeping, they soon fell asleep. When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us – there are no nuts or fruit on its branches."

- (5) مرهق
(6) فول سوداني

The end

"But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other. But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

- (7) أنقذ

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

ذات مرة كانت هناك شجرة كبيرة قديمة جدًا في أرض حارة وجافة. لقد عاشت لسنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريضًا جدًا وبه العديد من الأغصان الخضراء. كانت مشهورة لأنها كانت الشجرة الوحيدة التي عاشت حيثما كانت، وقد وفرت المأوى والراحة لمتات المسافرين أثناء تنقلهم عبر جميع أنحاء البلاد. كانت بالقرب من أربع مدن والعديد من القرى في منطقتها وكانت نقطة انتقال التجارة. في أحد الأيام، كان مسافران جديداً في المنطقة يمشيان عبر الحقل ورأيا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهم، "دعنا نوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل." قال له صديقه: "هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا." استراحا تحت الشجرة وشربوا بعض الماء، ثم استمتعوا بالظل والنعيم البارد. ولأنهما كانا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناما. عندما استيقظا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أي منهما طعامًا في حقائبهما، فنظرا إلى أغصان الشجرة. "هذه الشجرة عديمة الفائدة." قال أحدهما. "لا يوجد بها طعام لنا - لا توجد مكسرات أو فواكه على فروعها." قال الآخر: "لكن لها ظل وهذا يجعلنا نشعر بالبرودة." لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافرين الأول وكانت عاصية. "كيف يمكنك أن تكون حادًا إلى هذا الحد؟" قالت، "أنتيت إلى وأنت تشعر بالحر والتعب. أعطيتك مكانًا رائعًا ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك. انظروا، هناك لا يوجد مكان بارد آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا." نظر المسافران حولهما ورأيا أن الشجرة كانت على حق وشعرا بالأسف الشديد. () هو كاتب يوناني قديم له العديد من الأساطير المتداولة حتى اليوم. تعتبر أساطير إيسوب من أشهر القصص التي تتضمن دروسًا أخلاقية في التاريخ، ويتم استخدام العديد من الحكايات لتوجيه الأطفال فيما يتعلق بالمواضيع الأخلاقية ودروس الحياة.

PRACTICE



Lesson 2

12

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

Listen and complete:

استمع و أكمل:

- Ali: Hi, Ali (1) you jump when you were three?
Ali: No, but I could walk.
Ali: What else could you (2) when you were young?
Ali: I could (3) and run. What about you?
Ali: I could (4) French when I was younger.
Ali: Wow! That sounds amazing.

Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

- 1 I like math. I couldn't solve math problems quickly now. (.....)
2 I can't swim when I was a baby. and everyone was amazed. (.....)
3 John was a clever child. He can't read when he was eight. (.....)
4 A Could he walk when he was two? B Yes, he can't. (.....)

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 soon – travelers – asleep – The – fell.
.....
2 say – anything – I – can't – German – in.
.....
3 under – tree – the – travelers – The – rested.
.....
4 read – Can't – one – you – when – were – you?
.....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child listen and complete.

(2) Help your child correct the underlined words.

(3) Help your child reorder the words to make correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.

ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

Listening

14

4

Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Salma went to the desert last year. (.....)
- 2 They got lost in the desert. (.....)
- 3 They found a big lake. (.....)
- 4 They were ungrateful to the tree. (.....)

Reading

Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 I could speak French ...
 - 2 "Breeze" is ...
 - 3 Snails can ...
 - 4 They were exhausted.
 - 5 "A meeting point" is ...

- B**
- a. () They fell asleep.
 - b. () live in shells.
 - c. () somewhere where people meet.
 - d. () we can't use it.
 - e. () when I was five.
 - f. () a little wind.

Writing

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "What you could do when you were younger" using the following guiding elements:

5

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

could run – speak German

The water cycle



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



- (1) مياه الأمطار
- (2) محيط
- (3) عملية
- (4) تدفق
- (5) بخار الماء
- (6) يرتفع
- (7) تشكل
- (8) الدورة

Where does our water come from?

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some **rainwater** ⁽¹⁾ goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the **ocean** ⁽²⁾. This **process** ⁽³⁾ is called precipitation.

Some of the **rainwater** changes – the sun **warms** ⁽⁴⁾ it and it becomes **water vapor** ⁽⁵⁾. This process is called 'evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It **rises** ⁽⁶⁾ in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and **forms** ⁽⁷⁾ clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.

When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the **cycle** ⁽⁸⁾ starts again.

Check point:

- 1 Where does some rainwater go?
- 2 What is "evaporation"?

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.
الترجمة:

من أين يأتي الماء لدينا؟
المطر يتساقط من السحب في السماء. يذهب بعض من مياه الأمطار مباشرة إلى الأرض. لكن الكثير منها يذهب إلى الجداول والأنهار والبحيرات ثم المحيط. هذه العملية تسمى تساقط الأمطار. تتغير بعض مياه الأمطار - فالشمس تدفئها وتحول إلى بخار ماء. هذه العملية تسمى «التبخير». لا يمكننا رؤية أو شم بخار الماء ولا يبقى على الأرض، إنه يرتفع في الهواء، وعندما يصبح أكثر برودة في السماء، فإنه يتحول مرة أخرى إلى ماء ويتشكل سحب. عندما تكبر الغيوم، يزداد الماء ثقلاً بداخلها. عندما تصبح المياه في السحب أثقل، تسقط على الأرض، وتبدأ الدورة مرة أخرى.

Ancient Egyptian Society

المجتمع المصري القديم

Listen and Point

Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



artisans



nobles

Definitions



pharaoh { He ruled the country.
فرعون

كان هو من يحكم البلاد.



soldiers { They kept ancient Egyptians safe.
جنود

حافظوا على سلامة المصريين القدماء.



scribes { They wrote everything for the people.
كتبة



farmers { They grew the food for everyone.



traders { They bought and sold all the goods.
تجار

قاموا بشراء وبيع جميع البضائع.

ancient (adj.)	قديم/أثري	Egyptian (adj.)	مصري
society	مجتمع	taxes	ضرائب
safe (adj.)	أمن	kingdom	مملكة
army	جيش	papyrus	نبات البردي
records	سجلات	jewelry	مجوهرات
furniture	أثاث	chariot	مركبة حربية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
collect	يجمع	collected	ينظم
guard	يحرس	guarded	يتدرب
		train	trained

play an important role	يلعب دورًا هامًا	in charge	مستول عن
rule the country	يحكم البلد	make into	يحول
well-organized	منظم جيدًا		

Tip!

After you read a text, pick out some words you don't know and check them in a dictionary. Understanding them in the text will help you learn the words and remember them.

بعد قراءة النص، اختر بعض الكلمات التي لا تعرفها وتحقق منها في القاموس. سيساعدك فهمها في النص على تعلم الكلمات وتذكرها.

e.g. pharaoh – artisan – scribes



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) في كلمة (ancient) ينطق /s/ (ش).

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ph) في كلمة (pharaoh) ينطقان /f/ (ف) كما أن حرف الـ (h) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (d) في كلمة (soldier) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج).

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (tu) في كلمة (furniture) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش).

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك في التعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society.

The person **pharaoh** (1) was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with **nobles**, (2) and they looked after different things. The nobles collected **taxes** (3) and organized soldiers.



- | | |
|-----|----------|
| (1) | مسئول عن |
| (2) | النبل |
| (3) | الضرائب |
| (4) | الجيش |



Check point

1 Why were scribes important?

2 What did artisans do?

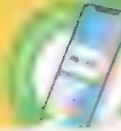
Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

لعب الكثير من الأشخاص المختلفين أدوارًا مهمة في المجتمع المصري القديم. كان الشخص المسئول هو الفرعون. احتاج الفرعون إلى الكثير من الأشخاص لمساعدته في إدارة البلاد. لقد عمل عن كثب مع النبلاء، وكانوا يعتنون بأشياء مختلفة. قام النبلاء بجمع الضرائب ونظموا الجنود. كان الجنود مشغولين بالحفاظ على مصر آمنة؛ نظرًا لأن مصر كانت دولة مهمة وغنية جدًا، فقد حرس الجنود المملكة. كان الجيش قويًا وأتقن الجنود مهامهم. كان الكتبة مهمين للغاية لأنهم عادة ما كانوا الوحيدين الذين يستطيعون القراءة والكتابة. تدربوا لمدة 12 عامًا قبل أن يكتبوا على ورق البردي. لقد كتبوا أشياء كثيرة مختلفة مثل الرسائل والسجلات والأوراق المهمة. بدون الكتبة، لم تكن تقريبًا نعرف شيئًا عن مصر القديمة اليوم. التجار هم الأشخاص الذين اشتروا وبيعوا كل شيء في المجتمع المصري القديم - الطعام والملابس والمجوهرات والزي العسكري والسفن ومواد البناء. أخذ الحرفيون المواد من التجار وصنعوا منها أشياء يستخدمها الناس، مثل الأثاث والمركبات الخفيفة والملابس. أنتج المزارعون الطعام الذي أكله الفرعون والنبلاء والجنود والكتبة والتجار والحرفيون.

PRACTICE



Lesson 3

13

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and complete:

4 استمع وأكمل:

- Scribes were the only people who could everything for the people.
- Scribes trained for about years before they wrote on papyrus.
- Scribes wrote many different things like letters,, and important papers.
- Without the scribes, we would know about Ancient Egypt today.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

5 اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- A**
- The sun warms the rain and ...
 - "Traders" are the people ...
 - "Pharaoh" was the person ...
 - Scribes trained for about 12 years ...
 - The nobles ...

- B**
- () who ruled the country.
 - () it becomes water vapor.
 - () before they wrote on the papyrus.
 - () who bought and sold all the goods.
 - () kept Ancient Egyptians safe.
 - () collected taxes.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

4 أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

- water - Where - from - does - come - our?
.....
- organized - collected - soldiers - taxes - They - nobles - and.
.....
- stay - the - ground - doesn't - vapor - on - Where.
.....
- were - Soldiers - safe - busy - Egypt - keeping.
.....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child listen and complete.

(2) Help your child read and match.

(3) Help your child reorder the words to make correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويفهم بالتوصيل.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF

on Lesson 3



Listening

15

Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Rain falls from clouds into streams, rivers, lakes, and oceans. ()
- 2 'Precipitation' is when the sun warms water and it becomes water vapor. ()
- 3 Water vapor rises in the air and gets warmer. ()
- 4 Water in the clouds gets heavier and falls to the ground again. ()



Reading

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Ancient Egyptians had important jobs to do. The pharaoh was the person who ruled the country. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. Scribes wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Traders bought and sold everything – food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building. Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, chariots, and clothes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The was the person who ruled the country.
a) artisan b) noble c) trader d) pharaoh
- 2 The collected taxes.
a) soldiers b) traders c) nobles d) artisans.

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did artisans do in Ancient Egyptian society?
- 4 What is the general idea of the text?



Writing

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Scribes in Ancient Egypt"

using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

What did scribes do in Ancient Egypt?

How long did they train before they could write on papyrus?

.....

.....

.....



STUDY

Lesson 4

This is so interesting!



Language Focus



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

(-er) suffix

A **suffix** is a group of letters that comes at the end of a word to give it a new meaning.

اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الأحرف تأتي في نهاية الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا.

e.g: We can add the suffix (-er) to the end of words to make a noun.

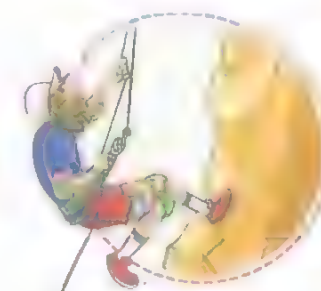
يمكننا إضافة اللاحقة (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمات لتكوين اسم.



teach يُدرّس teacher مُدرّسة



read يقرأ reader قارئ



climb يتسلق climber متسلق



football كرة القدم footballer لاعب كرة القدم



farm مزرعة farmer مزارع



travel يسافر traveler مسافر

B) To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

Ww /w/

لنطق الـ /w/، اصنع دائرة ضيقة بشفتيك.



winter

الشتاء



wet

مبتل

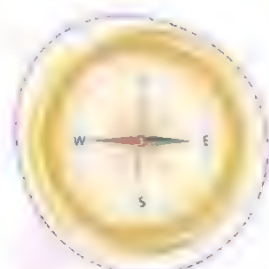


wheel

عجلة



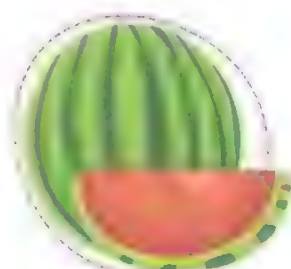
water



west



whale



watermelon

بطيخ



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Last Wednesday, I **decided**⁽¹⁾ to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano, but I had some **problems**⁽²⁾. I met some whales and they **turned over**⁽³⁾ my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay **afloat**⁽⁴⁾! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to **visit**⁽⁵⁾. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my **village**⁽⁶⁾!



- | | |
|-----|---------------|
| (1) | قررت |
| (2) | مشاكل |
| (3) | انقلب |
| (4) | طافيا (عائما) |
| (5) | شاطئ |
| (6) | قرية |

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة:

يوم الأربعاء الماضي قررت السفر غرباً في قارب مرندياً سترقى. كنت أبحث عن بركان ولكن كان لدى بعض المشاكل. قابلت بعض الحيتان وقلبت قاربي. كان علي أن أجلس على كمان لأبقى طافيا (عائما)! أنا أكلت البطيخ للبقاء بصحة جيدة ووصلت إلى الشاطئ. لم أجد البركان، لكني التقيت ببعض الأطباء البيطريين وأخذوني إلى قريتي!

PRACTICE



Lesson 4

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

- Ali: What's your dad(1).....?
- Hossam: He's a(2).....
- Ali: What does he do?
- Hossam: He(3)..... the food which people need.
- Ali: Where does he work?
- Hossam: He works in his(4)..... in Giza.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

A

- Nader's father is a farmer.
- Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer, ...
- Mr Ahmed is a great teacher.
- Nour is a professional climber.
- I can listen to her for hours.

B

- () She's so interesting.
- () She's so boring.
- () He works on his farm.
- () he plays for Arsenal.
- () He makes everything clear in our lessons.
- () She goes up some very high mountains.

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

4

- I was so living in that lesson; I almost fell asleep. (.....)
- I ran for 4 kilometers. I was happy. (.....)
- My cousin is a brilliant reading - he reads about 20 books a year. (.....)
- History is so interested. (SB) (.....)

Parents' tips

- Help your child listen and complete.
- Help your child read and match.
- Help your child read and correct the underlined words.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

TEST YOURSELF

an Lesson

Listening

15

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Waleed traveled east.
- 2 Waleed was wearing a vest.
- 3 Waleed was looking for a whale.
- 4 He had to sit on his violin to stay afloat.

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- ()
- ()
- ()
- ()

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

People have different jobs. A teacher is the person who teaches us many interesting information. A teacher is always kind and friendly. The teacher makes everything clear in the class. A footballer is the person who plays football. Egypt has famous footballers like Mohammed Salah and Mohammed Elneny. A farmer works on a farm. He has a very important job; he grows food for us to eat and grow. A climber is the person who goes up high mountains. A climber must be professional to climb mountains safely.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The text is about different which help us.
a) tools b) jobs c) sports d) foods
- 2 A is the person who goes up high mountains.
a) footballer b) farmer c) climber d) teacher

Answer the following questions:

- 1 Mention two famous Egyptian footballers from the passage.
- 2 Why are farmers important?

Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Egyptian footballers" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

famous footballer – plays for

STUDY

Writing / Project

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From Amir
To Tamer
Subject Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,
Thanks for your How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball (2) and I play on a team once a week. This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong (3) – can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the every day. What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know. Hope to (6) hear from you soon! Amir

- (1) بريد إلكتروني
- (2) لعبة كرة السلة
- (3) أطوم (اسم الحيوان)
- (4) اسم الشهرة
- (5) قاع البحر
- (6) يأمل

How to write an email

Introduction

- 1 Begin your email with "Dear" or "Hi" and the person's name.
- 2 Say why you are writing. Use phrases like "Just a quick note" and "Thanks for writing to me".

قل لماذا تكتب. استخدم عبارات مثل مجرد ملاحظة سريعة وشكراً على مراسلتي

- 3 Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it – look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it.

- 4 When writing to a friend, you can use informal language.

- 5 Words like "awesome" and "cool," contractions like "I'm," and phrases like "How's life?" and "How are things?"

عند الكتابة إلى صديق، يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية، على سبيل المثال كلمات مثل مدهش ورائع، واختصارات مثل "I'm" بدلاً من "I am"، وعبارات مثل "كيف حالك؟"

- 6 End your email with phrases like: Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, or Bye for now, and then your name.

قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل اكتب قريباً، أراك قريباً، أتمنى لك التوفيق، أو إلى اللقاء الآن ثم اسمك.

Parents' tips

Help your child recognize the form of email.

ساعد طفلك في التعرف على شكل البريد الإلكتروني.

الترجمة:

عزيزي تامر،

شكراً على بريدك الإلكتروني. كيف حالك؟ كان من الممتع جداً أن نخبرني عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أحب لعبة كرة السلة وألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع.

تحدث كثيراً هذا الأسبوع عن الحيوانات غير المألوفة في المدرسة. اطلعنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. حيوان غير المألوف المفضل من مصر هو الأطوم - هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه يتمتع بوجه ودود جميل وهو لطيف للغاية! لقيه هو بقرة البحر ويقضي ساعات طويلة من تناول العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

وماذا عنك؟ ما هو حيوانك غير المألوف المفضل؟

اكتب مرة أخرى وأعلمني.

أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريباً

أمير

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

- 1 Amir's favorite unusual is the dugong.
- 2 This animal got a lovely friendly
- 3 Its nickname is the sea
- 4 This animal spends many hours eating from the sea bed.

2 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 can you see the photo
.....
- 2 it has got a lovely friendly face
.....

Write an email about an animal of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

Your email address is: hany@student.com

Your friend's email address is : ali@student.com.

5

اكتب بريداً إلكترونيًا من أربعين (40) كلمة عن حيوان باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

cold areas – black and white feathers

Dear,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child listen and complete.
- (2) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.

Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Tamer is writing to Amir. ()
- 2 Dugong is an unusual animal from Egypt. ()
- 3 Dugong is a land animal. ()
- 4 Dugong eats meat. ()

Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

A

- 1 I love basketball.
- 2 Dugong is an unusual animal ...
- 3 Dugong has got a lovely friendly face.
- 4 Dugong has a nickname.
- 5 Dugong eats grass ...

B

- a. () from the sea bed every day.
- b. () around the world.
- c. () from Egypt.
- d. () It's called the sea cow.
- e. () I play on a team once a week.
- f. () It's very cute.

Writing

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 your – What's – unusual – animal – favorite – , Ola?
- 2 got – lovely – has – friendly – Dugong – face – a.
- 3 hear – soon – from – Hope – you – to!
- 4 sea – nickname – the – cow – Dugong's – is.



★★★★★



Vocabulary

Wildlife



kangaroo



panda



bat



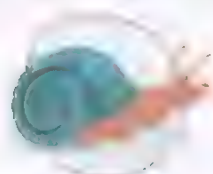
lion



penguin



dolphin



snail



parrot

Pronunciation

Vv /v/



vet



vase



violin



volcano



vest

Ww /w/



winter



wet



wheel



water



west



whale



watermelon

Language Focus

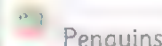
1 can / can't

Form:

(Subject + can / can't + (inf) ...)



I can play basketball.



Penguins fly.

Questions:

A: Can + subject + (inf)... ?

OR B: Yes, subject + can.

B: No, subject + can't.



A: Can you play tennis?

B: Yes, I can.



Can she make a cake?

Yes, she can.

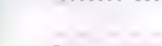
2 could / couldn't

Form:

(Subject + could/couldn't + (inf) ...)



When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.



I couldn't catch the bus, so I had to walk.

Questions:

A: Could + subject + (inf)... ?

OR B: Yes, subject + could.

B: No, subject + couldn't.



Could she talk when she was six months old?

B: Yes, she could say "mama" and "dada!"



Could you ride a bike when you were three?

No, I couldn't.



Lesson 1

الكنغر	حلزون
بطريق	خفاش
أسد	بيغاء
باندا	دولفين
صدفة	حياة برية
نبات الخيزران	محيط
ثلاجة	جراب

Lesson 2

فرع شجرة	جذع شجرة
مرهق	فول سوداني
مسافر	قاموس
ظل	ملجأ
جاحد (غير شكور)	وقح
عديم الفائدة	نسيم
	مريح

Lesson 3

حرفيون	نبلاء
فرعون	حدود
كتبة	مرارعون
تجار	مملكة
مجتمع	نبات البردي
الضرائب	مجوهرات
جيش	أثاث
	مركبة حربية

Lesson 4

قارئ	مدرس
لاعب كرة القدم	متسلق
زهريّة	مزارع
طبيب بيطري	آلة لكمان
بركان	سيرة
الشتاء	منزل
عجلة	غرب
حوت	بطيخ
	عياء

WRITING TIME

"Wildlife animals"

live in Australia – beautiful and colorful

There are many wild animals in the world. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. Parrots are birds. They are very beautiful and colorful. They live in the rainforest. Dolphins are very intelligent. They swim in a group with their family in the ocean.

"Scribes in Ancient Egypt"

- * What was special about scribes?
- * What did they do?

Scribes were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

"Egyptian footballers"

plays football – plays for Liverpool

People have different jobs. A footballer is the person who plays football. A footballer must be fast and have good skills. Egypt has famous footballers like Mohammed Salah who plays for Liverpool and Mohammed Elneny who plays for Arsenal.

"An unusual animal"

- * What's your favorite unusual animal?
- * Where does this animal live?

From Ola
To Ali
Subject An unusual animal

Dear Ali,

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. I think my favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the panda. Pandas live in forests high in the mountains. They eat bamboo. They are black and white. Pandas can adapt to their environment, which is cold and snowy.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Ola

PRACTICE

More on Grammar

12

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 Snails (can – can't – aren't – isn't) run fast.
- 2 Last year, he (can – could – can't – couldn't) play football, but now he can.
- 3 My grandpa is a (farm – farmer – farming – farms), he grows food for us.
- 4 That long walk was very (amazing – interesting – tiring – surprising), I can't wait to get home and relax.

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

4

- 1 This book is so bored! (.....)
- 2 It's annoyed when people talk so loudly. (.....)
- 3 When he was a baby, he can't speak. (.....)
- 4 Now, he can understanding what the teacher is saying. (.....)

3 Read and rewrite the following:

اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتي:

4

- 1 I can play chess this year. (last year)
- 2 The movie was boring. (I was)
- 3 Sarah teaches very well. (teacher)
- 4 No, I couldn't. But I could swim when I was ten. (Could ..?)

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child correct the underlined words.
- (3) Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
ساعد طفلك أن يصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.

115



Listening



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Snails have two arms and legs. ()
- 2 Kangaroos live in Africa. ()
- 3 Bats can't fly in the morning. ()
- 4 Lions are big dogs. ()

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

4

- 1 live on ice and snow.
- 2 Parrots live in the
- 3 A dolphin swims in a with its family in the ocean.
- 4 Pandas eat



Reading

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- | | |
|--|---|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Could you play the piano... 2 When water becomes water vapor, ... 3 Traders... 4 Soldiers kept ancient Egyptians safe. 5 I find Waleed very annoying, ... | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. () bought and sold all the goods in Ancient Egypt. b. () he always shouts out. c. () They guarded the kingdom. d. () I was looking for a volcano. e. () when you were a child? f. () this process is called "evaporation". |
|--|---|

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

People played important roles in Ancient Egypt. The pharaoh was the person in charge. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers. Soldiers guarded the kingdom. Scribes were the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today. Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans. Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Soldiers guarded the
a) pharaoh b) king c) kingdom d) nobles
- 2 collected taxes and organized soldiers.
a) Nobles b) Scribes c) Soldiers d) Traders

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How important were the scribes in Ancient Egypt?
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 in – Snails – shells – live – their – can.
- 2 was – could – When – I – little, – run – I.
- 3 into – Rainwater – ground – straight – goes – the.
- 4 birds – see – What – you – did – ,Ramy?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 what animals did you see
- 2 i couldn't speak german last year.

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Water cycle" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

called precipitation – becomes water vapor

Non-fiction Reader



STUDY

Are There Endangered Animals in Egypt?



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

endangered	مهدد بالانقراض	extinct (adj)	منقرض
poaching	الصيد الجائر	Egyptian tortoise	السلحفاة المصرية
Dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس	herbivores	أكل الأعشاب
loss	خسارة	pollution	تلوث
actions	أفعال/ تصرفات		

Extra vocabulary

species	أنواع/ فصائل	population	عدد السكان	length	الطول
weight	الوزن	top speed	السرعة القصوى	diet	النظام الغذائي
wild	بري	Negev desert	صحراء النقب	farming	الزراعة
building	البناء				

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Verb	Present	Past	Present	Past
protect	يحمي	protected	live	يعيش
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	hunt	يصطاد
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة		
become	يصبح	became	keep	يربى (للحيوانات)
				kept

Definitions

extinct : منقرض

if something is extinct, it no longer exists

إذا انقرض شيء ما، يعني أنه لم يعد موجودًا.

habitat : مكان معيشة

the place where an animal or a plant lives

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

If an animal is **endangered** ⁽¹⁾, it means that it could become extinct. Animals can become endangered for several reasons including loss of habitat, pollution, and **poaching** ⁽²⁾.

It's our responsibility to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our actions shouldn't hurt wild animals or their habitats.

In Egypt, around 70 species of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

Egyptian tortoise



Facts

Population: 7,470
can live up to: 50 years
Length: 14.4 cm
Weight: 160–350 g
Top speed: up to 8 km per hour
Diet: plants and leaves

Dorcas gazelle



Facts

Population: 1,000–2,000
can live up to: 15 years
Length: 90–100 cm
Weight: 15–20 kg
Top speed: up to 96 km per hour
Diet: plants and leaves

The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Negev deserts. They are **herbivores** ⁽³⁾ – this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly **extinct** ⁽⁴⁾ for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

Check point

- 1 Where does the Egyptian tortoise live?
- 2 Why Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct?

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

إذا كان حيوان ما مهدد بالانقراض، فهذا يعني أنه من الممكن أن يصبح منقرضًا. يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض لعدة أسباب بما في ذلك فقدان أماكن معيشتهم والتلوث والصيد الجائر. حماية الحيوانات البرية كلها مسئوليتنا؛ لأننا نشارك معهم الأرض. يجب ألا تؤذي أفعالنا الحيوانات أو بيئاتهم.

في مصر، هناك حوالي ٧٠ نوعًا من الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض. دعونا نلقي نظرة على اثنين منهم:

تعتبر السلحفاة المصرية من أصغر السلحفاة في العالم. إنها تعيش في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا. ومع ذلك، فإن السلحفاة المصرية الآن مهددة بالانقراض. هذا ليس بسبب تدمير مكان معيشتها فقط، ولكن أيضًا لأن الناس تأخذها من البرية لتربيتها كحيوان أليف.

يعيش غزال دوركاس في الصحراء الكبرى وصحاري النقب. إنها حيوانات آكلة الأعشاب - هذا يعني أنها تأكل أوراق الأشجار والنباتات فقط. غزال دوركاس تقريبًا على وشك الانقراض لسببين رئيسيين: أولًا، أن الناس يصطادونها من أجل لحومها وجلدها. ثانيًا، يستخدم المزيد والمزيد من الناس مكان معيشتها للزراعة والبناء.

THEME

4

Being Responsible

كوني مسئولاً



Parents' tips

Theme Four "Being Responsible" aims to help students understand more about the world around them. Students discover more about different places in town, famous cities to visit around Egypt, and what makes their towns perfect. It also speaks about the benefits of getting out into the fresh air and different places to spend vacations around the world.

المحور الرابع «أنا أكون مسئولاً» يهدف إلى مساعدة الطلاب أن يفهموا أكثر عن العالم المحيط بهم. يكتشف الطلاب المزيد عن الأماكن الموجودة بالبلدة، مدن مشهورة داخل مصر لزيارتها، وما يجعل مدنتهم مثالية. يتحدث أيضًا عن فوائد التنزه في الهواء الطلق والأماكن المختلفة لقضاء الإجازات حول العالم.

Let's Visit Egypt

هيا نلّو مصر



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
 - listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
 - practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.
 - practice using questions and short answers.
 - read and say words with diphthongs.
 - estimate with mental math.
 - write a paragraph about his/her town.
 - make a poster about his/her perfect town.

• نهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- يقرأ ويقول الكلمات باستخدام الإدغام.

Warm up

This unit is about different places in town. It talks about life and society in in Ancient and modern Egypt. It's also about forming positive and negative imperatives and writing about the perfect town.

Did you know?

Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. **Archaeologists*** think it is more than 7,000 years old.



I can find it out!

Today, the **population*** of Fayoum is **approximately*** 3.8 million. Most people live in Cairo where the population is about 10.201.183. Around 5,521,000 people live in Alexandria as well.



archaeologists*

علماء الآثار

population*

تعداد سكاني

approximately*

تقريبًا

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



bank



factory



monument



library

shopping mall
مول تجارىsquare
ميدان

station

stores

متاجر (محلات)

roof garden

حديقة السطح

relaxing (adj.)

مريح

traditional

تقليدى

ingredients

مكونات

Barcelona

برشلونة

culture

ثقافة

markets

أسواق

mint tea

شاي بالنعناع

cuisine

مأكولات

lovely

جميل

originally

في الأصل

mix

مزيج

traditions

عادات

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
chat	chatted	own	owned
serve	served	remind	reminded

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
think	thought	sit	sat
drink	drank	buy	bought

I haven't been to any yet.

لم أذهب إلى أى منها بعد.

spend ages

نقضى الكثير من الوقت

on vacation

في عطلة

show (someone) around

يرى (شخص ما) الجوار

Parents tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه بقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية QR code.

Why we love Alexandria!



Look and read:

انظر وامرأ.

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach!

We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think...

الإسكندرية مكان رائع للزيارة. هناك الكثير لنتراه ونفعله هنا! إنها مدينة كبيرة بها العديد من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف المدهشة. حتى إنه هناك شاطئ! سألنا بعض الناس الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عما يعتقدونه ...



Jens

I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

أنا أزور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. الأمر حقاً رائع هنا. أعتقد أنه يوجد بعض المتاحف الجيدة، ولكني لم أذهب إلى أي منها بعد. إنني فقط أحب الجلوس في حديقة السطح الخاصة بالفندق وأشرب الشاي بالنعناع المصري اللذيذ وأتحدث مع أشخاص آخرين. إنه أمر مريح جداً.

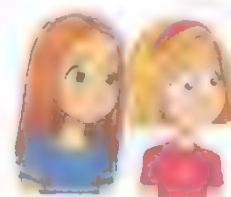


Hanan

I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. أملك مطعمًا هنا ولذلك يتوجب عليّ دعوتك لزيارة المطعم لتجرب بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم أطعمة مصرية تقليدية باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة وجميلة. لدينا العديد من المتاجر الرائعة ولكني أفضل شراء المكونات من سوق المدينة القديمة.

Kira and Lena



We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria – the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

نحن من مدينة صغيرة في إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة جدًا هناك. هذا أكثر شيء نحبه في الإسكندرية - المولات التجارية! يمكننا قضاء الكثير من الوقت في التجول حولها. نحن نحب الناس. هم ودودون جدًا!



Karim

I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach – there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي وأحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل في بنك. مكاني المفضل هو الشاطئ - لا يوجد شاطئ في القاهرة! يمكن أن يصبح الجو حارًا جدًا في الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة.



Paulo

I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home – a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

أنا في عطلة هنا من برشلونة. أنا أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرني بموطنى - مدينة كبيرة وعصرية بالقرب من البحر. أنا أحب هذا الميخ من المباني الحديثة والقديمة. كما أحب أيضًا اكتشاف الثقافات والعادات. المكتبة مذهلة!

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Sara

I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

سأزور عمتي وعمي. نحن ذاهبون بالقطار.

My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

ابن عمي سيقوم بزيارتنا وسوف نريه المنطقة في الجوار. لم يسبق له أن رأى الأهرامات.

Anme



Dina

We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

Youssef



I want to borrow some books.

أريد استعارة بعض الكتب.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية ال QR code ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

PRACTICE



Lesson 1

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Paulo is from Barcelona. He is on vacation in Alexandria this summer. Paulo likes to spend the summer in Alexandria because there are many things to see and do there. He stays in a big hotel with a small roof garden on top. He likes to sit there, drink sweet Egyptian mint tea, and chat with other people. He likes to visit local restaurants from time to time to try some of the traditional Egyptian cuisines. They are usually made from lovely fresh ingredients.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Paulo likes to drink on the roof garden.
a) water b) mint tea c) juice d) coffee
- The word "cuisines" means
a) stores b) markets c) foods d) clothes

3 Answer the following questions:

- Where is Paulo from?
.....
- Why does Paulo like to spend the summer in Alexandria?
.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

4

- Where – from – Karim – does – come?
.....
- good – There – museums – some – are – Alexandria – in.
.....
- from – a small – There – in – town – England.
.....
- likes – mint – There – the hotel – drinking – tea – in.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- i am visiting Alexandria from germany.
.....
- why do you love alexandria?
.....

Parents' tips

- Help your child read the text and answer.
- Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 1

Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

14

- 1 Kira and Lena are from Egypt. ()
- 2 There are many stores and shopping malls in Alexandria. ()
- 3 Kira and Lena like to spend a lot of time sitting on the roof garden. ()
- 4 People in Alexandria are very friendly. ()

Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 We serve traditional food ...
 - 2 The bank and the library ...
 - 3 I just like sitting on the roof garden, ...
 - 4 There are some good museums, ...
 - 5 It's great to go to the beach ...

- B**
- a. () but I haven't been to any yet.
 - b. () in hot summer days.
 - c. () and drinking sweet mint tea.
 - d. () using local ingredients.
 - e. () We like the people.
 - f. () are places in my town.

Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Alexandria" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية:

5

- * Why do you love Alexandria?
- * What can you do there?

STUDY

Lessons 2 & 3

Let's find out!

Don't run in the library!

Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

signs	علامات	structures	مبانٍ	papyrus	نبات البردي
scenes	مشاهد	occasions	مناسبات	feasts	أعياد
events	أحداث	vases	مزهريات	carriers	أوعية
symbol	رمز	pharaoh	فرعون	upstairs	الطابق العلوي
button	زر	shelf	رف	trash can	سلة القمامة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
exist	توجد	celebrate	يحتفل
bury	يدفن	push	يدفع

Expressions and Phrases

find out	يكتشف	waste time	يضيع الوقت
Stand back.	ارجع للخلف.		

Definitions

evidence	دليل	facts that show something is true	الحقائق التي تظهر أن شيئاً ما صحيح
monument	أثر	a building or statue	مبنى أو تمثال
painting	رسم	a picture	صورة
artifact	تحف	objects like vases and pots which were made in the past	أشياء مثل المزهريات والأواني التي صنعت في الماضي
tomb	مقبرة	people were buried here when they died.	يدفن الناس هنا عندما يموتون
hieroglyphics	الهيرغليفية	a kind of writing using pictures and symbols	نوع من الكتابة باستخدام الصور والرموز

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية QR code.

Let's find out!



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?

There is lots of **evidence** that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.

هناك الكثير من الأدلة التي تخبرنا عن الحياة في مصر القديمة. الدليل هو الحقائق أو العلامات التي تظهر بوضوح وجود شيء ما أو أنه صحيح.



We can learn about buildings from ancient **monuments**⁽²⁾. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

يمكننا أن نتعلم عن المباني من الآثار القديمة. تم بناء هذه المباني للاحتفال بالأشخاص المهمة.



Paintings⁽³⁾ are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events.

الرسومات تتواجد على الحدران أو أوراق البردي. توضح الرسومات مشاهد من الحياة اليومية، كالفلحين الذين يعملون في الحقول، أو المناسبات الخاصة كالأعياد والأحداث المميزة.



Artifacts⁽⁴⁾ are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

التحف هي أشياء من الحياة اليومية كالزهريات وأوعية المياه التي تخبرنا كيف عاش الناس.



Hieroglyphics⁽⁵⁾ are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

اللغة الهيروغليفية هي كتابة مصرية قديمة باستخدام الرموز والصور. من اللغة الهيروغليفية يمكننا الحصول على دليل عن حياة القدماء المصريين.



Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful **tombs**⁽⁶⁾. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

الفرعون والشخصيات الهامة الأخرى كانت تدفن في مقابر جميلة. وكان هناك أيضًا أشياء أخرى اعتقد الناس أنهم سيحتاجونها ومعلومات عن حياتهم.

Check point

- 1 Why did Ancient Egyptians build monuments?
- 2 What are hieroglyphics?

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passages correctly.

Language Focus



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Imperatives صيغة الأمر

We use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.

نحن نستخدم صيغة الأمر لنقول لشخص ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما.

Form

Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject like "you, she or they". Imperatives usually start with a verb.

صيغة الأمر عادة لا تبدأ بفعل مثل «أنت، هي أو هم». صيغة الأمر عادة تبدأ بالفعل.

Affirmative imperatives:

Use the "infinitive" without "to":

نستخدم الفعل في المصدر من غير "to":

Infinitive (مصدر الفعل)



Pick up that trash, please.



Stand up!



Negative imperatives:

Use "Don't + infinitive" without "to":

Don't + Infinitive (.....)



Don't eat in the library, please.



Don't talk loudly, please.



Parents' tips

Help your child use the imperatives correctly.

Asking about and giving directions:

السؤال والإجابة عن الاتجاهات :

A: Excuse me, how do I get to + place (المكان)?
B: Go straight.

A: Where is the + place (المكان), please?
B: Cross the road.

A: Is there (a place (المكان) near here?
B: Turn right/left.

eg.

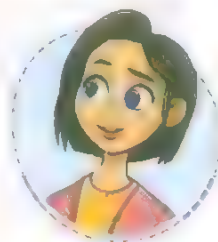


Excuse me, how do I get to the library, please?

عذراً، كيف أصل إلى المكتبة رجاءً؟

Go straight, turn right. It's on your left.

اتجه مباشرة ثم انعطف يمينا. إنه على يسارك.



Check point

Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح ما تحته خط:

1 Don't eating in the classroom. (.....)

2 A Where is the post office? B It's at the end of the street. (.....)

3 Looking left and right before you cross the road. (.....)

Parents' tips

Help your child ask about and give directions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويصيح عن الاتجاهات بطريقة صحيحة.

PRACTICE

Lessons 2 & 3

12

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 (Didn't – Don't – Do – Doesn't) write in the book.
- 2 (Where – When – What – How) is the clothes store?
- 3 Please Ali, (~~doesn't~~ – ~~does~~ – ~~don't~~ – ~~can't~~) waste your time.
- 4 Don't (~~shouts~~ – shout – is shouting – shouting). Speak quietly.

SB

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Ancient monuments can tell us a lot about the past. They were built to celebrate important people. Paintings on walls or on papyrus show scenes of daily life. Artifacts are the things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt. Tombs also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 on walls or on papyrus show scenes of daily life.
a) People b) Paintings c) Stones d) Monuments
- 2 Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing and pictures.
a) people b) symbols c) stones d) monuments

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why were the monuments built?
.....
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 hieroglyphics are Ancient egyptian writing symbols and pictures.
.....
- 2 how do we know about Ancient Egypt
.....

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child read the text and answer.
- (3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويصيح.

ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



TEST YOURSELF on Lessons 2 & 3



Listening

13

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. ()
- 2 Paintings show scenes of nature. ()
- 3 Artifacts are like vases and water carriers. ()
- 4 Artifacts tell us how people died in the past. ()



Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

A 1 "Evidence" is ...

2 "Hieroglyphics" are writing ...

3 Monuments were built...

4 Artifacts are objects like ...

5 A "tomb" is a place ...

B

a. () vases and pots.

b. () to celebrate important people.

c. () where people were buried there when they died.

d. () facts that show something is true.

e. () cool to wear in hot days.

f. () symbols and pictures.



Writing

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

4

1 were – Pharaohs – beautiful – tombs – in – buried.

2 in – Don't – library, – the – please – eat.

3 mobile – use – phone – Don't – here – your.

4 do – How – the – to – museum – I – get?



Lesson 4

Gabi Learns a Lesson



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل.

villager	قروي	ibis	طائر أبو منجل
jerboa	الجربوع	market traders	تجار السوق

sack	شوال	lost	تائه / مفقود
strange-looking	غريب المنظر	branches	فروع
unkindly	بطريقة غير عطوفة	crowds	الجمهير
funny-looking	مضحك المنظر	creature	مخلوق
rudely	بطريقة وقحة	foolish	أحمق (غبي)
stranger	غريب		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	يتظاهر
entertain	يسلى	entertained	يعتذر
		apologize	apologized

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
give	يعطى	gave	يبدأ
		begin	began

walk far	يمشى بعيداً	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
get dark	تظلم (يصبح الجو مظلمًا)	go alone	يذهب بمفرده
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة		

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans – I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't *recognize* the road.



(1) يتعرف على

The middle

"Are you *lost*?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a *strange-looking* bird.

"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.



Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi –

again he wasn't *telling the truth*. "Anyway, even if I was, you can't help – you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to *entertain* the crowds

- (2) تائه / مفقود
(3) غريب المنظر
(4) يقول الحقيقة
(5) يسلي

The end

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking *creature*!" Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was *foolish* and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to *apologize* and to ask for their help the next day.



- (6) مخلوق
(7) أحق (غبي)
(8) يعتذر

Check point

1 Where was the camel going?

2 Did the snake help the camel?

Vocabulary Check

Adjectives that consist of two words with a dash in the middle.

الصفات المركبة: هي صفات تتكون من كلمتين بينهما شرطة صغيرة.

bird

creature

Parents' tips

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

بدأ الجو يظلم. رأى جابي حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه.

"ياله من مخلوق مضحك الشكل. انظروا إلى هذه الأذن الضخمة." فكر جابي مع نفسه.

"مرحبًا، هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟" قال الجربوع.

"لا. لا أحتاج" رد جابي بطريقة غظة ولم يكن يعرف أن الجربوع يمكنه أن يسمع أصوات تجار المدينة.

"حسنًا إذن، ليلة سعيدة." صاح الجربوع.

قريب أصبح الجو مظلمًا تمامًا وفهم جابي أنه يحتاج لمساعدة تلك الحيوانات. عرف أنه كان أحق وشعر بالأسف. قرر جابي أن ينام ويتأسف لتلك الحيوانات ويطلب مساعدتهم في

اليوم التالي.

Parents' tips

الترجمة:

في يوم من الأيام أراد القروي أن يبيع الفول في السوق. لكنه لم يستطع أن يمشي بعيدًا. عرض عليه جملة (جابي) قائلاً "دعني آخذ شوال الفول - سأخذه إلى السوق من أجلك".

مشى جابي؟ على طول الطريق، انعطفت يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى. بعدها لم يتعرف جابي على الطريق.

"هل أنت تائه؟" صاح طائر المنجل. لم ير جابي من قبل طائرًا غريب الشكل كهذا.

"لا. أنا لست تائها." تظاهر جابي ولم يكن يعرف أن طائر المنجل يستطيع أن يطير فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.

رأى جابي ثعبانًا يشاهده من على أغصان الشجرة.

"هل أنت تائه؟" قال الثعبان.

"لا. أنا لست تائها." قال جابي - مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. «على أي حال فحقي أو كنت تائها، لما استطعت مساعدتي - أنت ليست لديك أرجل حق. قال جابي بطريقة غير

عظوفة. لم يكن جابي يعرف أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم ليقوم بعروض لتسليّة الجماهير.

Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways.

/əʊ/	/aɪ/	/ɔɪ/	/eɪ/
go ذهب	bite عض / أكل	boy ولد	make صنع
show أظهر	right يمين	toy لعبة	play لعب
below أدنى	time وقت	coin عملة	ache ألم
grow نمى	bike دراجة	enjoy استمتع	ate أكل
wrote كتب	wrote كتب	paint ألوان	bake خبز

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

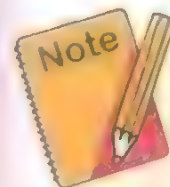
Math



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

An estimated answer isn't the actual answer. It's a good guess.



We can use the following expressions to talk about estimated answers:

يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية للتحدث عن الإجابات التقديرية:

- It's around - It's about - It's near - It's close to

بمعنى "تقريباً/حوالي".

Parents' tips

Help your child use estimated answers correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الإجابات التقديرية بطريقة صحيحة.

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل من العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- The snake haven't got any legs, ...
 - The sound in the word "ache" ...
 - A: What is $12 + 17$?
 - The ibis could fly above the land ...
 - The camel knew he was foolish ...

- B**
- () B: It's around 30.
 - () and tell the camel the way.
 - () but he goes to the market every day.
 - () No, I don't.
 - () is the same as in the word "make".
 - () and he apologized for the animals.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

1 offered – help – Gabi – the – to – villager.

2 could – land – the – above – fly.

3 will – 50 – Egyptian – be – pounds – around.

4 enjoys – with – playing – boy – toys – his.

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Asking for help" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية:

5

- * What was the problem?
- * Who could help you?

Parents' tips

- Help your child read and match.
- Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقيم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.

12

Listening

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

- Gabi, the , was lost.
- The jerboa has enormous
- The jerboa can the sounds of the market traders.
- Gabi knew he was and he apologized.

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Gabi is a helpful camel. He took the sack of beans to sell it for the villager. On his way to the market, he got lost. First, Gabi met an ibis. The ibis offered to help the camel as he could fly above the land and tell him the way. But Gabi **pretended*** he isn't lost and refused any help. Then, Gabi met a snake. The snake offered to help as he goes to the market every day to **entertain** the crowds. Gabi refused any help and he was unkind to the snake.

(تظاهر بـ pretended*)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Gabi is a/an
a) ibis b) camel c) snake d) villager
- The underlined word "**entertain**" means to make people feel
a) happy b) sad c) tired d) sick

Answer the following questions:

- How did Gabi help the villager?
- Who offered to help Gabi?

Writing

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- no, I'm not lost
- do you need any help

Writing



Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:



This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but **it's not boring** because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions⁽²⁾. You will see famous³ places like Buckingham Palace⁽⁴⁾, theaters⁽⁵⁾, and the British Museum⁽⁶⁾. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the **river** and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find **delicious** food from all over the world here!

- | | |
|-----|------------------|
| (1) | لا يهم |
| (2) | أماكن جذب سياحي |
| (3) | مشهور |
| (4) | قصر باكنجهام |
| (5) | مسارح |
| (6) | المتحف البريطاني |
| (7) | نهر التمز |
| (8) | لذيذ |

NEW ALAMEIN



Look and read:

انظر واقراً:



New Alamein

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake⁽¹⁾ right in the middle of⁽²⁾ the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park⁽³⁾. If you want to learn about the **history** of the area, then visit the **Archaeological Center**⁽⁵⁾. There are some amazing treasures⁽⁶⁾ there.

I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

- | | |
|-----|-----------------|
| (1) | بحيرة |
| (2) | في المنتصف |
| (3) | الحديقة الدولية |
| (4) | خلاف |
| (5) | المركز الأثري |
| (6) | كنوز |

Steps of writing a paragraph to describe your town or city:

- 1 Write notes about the good things of your town.
- 2 Write about famous tourist attractions.
- 3 Write about the location.
- 4 Write about the history.

اكتب عن تاريخ مدينتك.

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:
إنها واحدة من أكثر المدن الممتعة في العالم. عادة ما تمطر هنا ولكن هذا لا يهم حيث يوجد العديد من الأشياء الممتعة لتقوم بها. يمكن أن تذهب في جولة إلى الأماكن السياحية المختلفة في الحافلة الحمراء الكبيرة. سوف يمكنك رؤية العديد من الأماكن المشهورة كقصر باكنجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطاني. يمكنك أن تذهب في رحلة مريحة بالقرب في نهر التمز وتعب من أسفل الكبارى المشهورة. كل هذا التجول سيجعلك تشعر بالجوع. ولكن لا تقلق، يوجد العديد من المطاعم المختلفة التي يمكنك أن تختار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعاماً لذيذاً من جميع أنحاء العالم!

Pronunciation

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

هناك العديد من الأشياء العنيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة. المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حاراً. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل ١٤ كمراً توجد أيضاً بحيرة خضراء كبيرة في وسط المدينة. يمكنك أيضاً زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت ترغب في التعرف على التاريخ الخلاب للمنطقة، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثري. هناك بعض الكنوز المدهشة. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.

Our perfect town



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

In our perfect town⁽¹⁾, there is a big zoo right next to⁽²⁾ the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed⁽³⁾ the animals.

It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark⁽⁴⁾ that is always open. It's free⁽⁵⁾ to go in!



- (1) مدينه رائعة
(2) بجانب
(3) يطعم
(4) حديقة ألعاب مائية
(5) مجاناً
(6) زهبات عائلية



There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.

There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics⁽⁶⁾ in the shade.

This is our perfect town!

Parents' tips

Help your child read and notice the steps of making a poster about his/her town.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ خطوات كتابة ملصق عن مدينته.
الترجمة:

في بلدنا الرائعة، يوجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجانب المدرسة. يمكننا الذهاب هناك في كل ظهيرة بعد الحصص الدراسية. يمكننا أن نساعد في إطعام الحيوانات.
إن الجو حار في مدينتنا، لذلك توجد حديقة ألعاب مائية مفتوحة دائماً، يمكنك الدخول بلا مقابل.
يوجد العديد من الأسواق الرائعة التي تباع جميع أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة، كالخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة.
توجد حديقة كبيرة بها العديد من الأشجار لذلك يمكننا الذهاب في زهبات عائلية في الظل.
هذه هي مدينتنا الرائعة!

PRACTICE



Lessons 5 & 6

12

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ola. I live in a big apartment with my family in New Alamein. New Alamein is a new Egyptian city. It's a wonderful place with many tourist attractions. The International Park is a very famous place to visit. There is also a large lake, a theme park, and shopping malls. The beach is over 14 kilometers long. The Archaeological Center is my favorite place to visit. There are some amazing treasures there. You can learn about the fascinating history of the area.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ola lives in a/an Egyptian city.
a) new b) old c) ancient d) past
- The is Ola's favorite place to visit.
a) International Park b) lake
c) Archaeological Center d) beach

Answer the following questions:

- How long is the beach in New Alamein?
- What can you do at the Archaeological Center?

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- eat - What - can - we - in - London?
- beach - city - The - on - is - the.
- plenty - of - There - different - are - restaurants.
- in - go - free - is - to.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- don't miss the beautiful International Park
- what can you do in london?

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read the text and answer.

(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lessons 5 & 6



Listening

14

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 It never rains in London. ()
- 2 There are many tourist attractions there. ()
- 3 Buckingham Palace is in Egypt. ()
- 4 You can go on a boat trip in River Thames. ()



Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 You can go on a big red bus ... 2 The beach in New Alamein ... 3 There is a green lake ... 4 You can go on a relaxing boat trip ... 5 The Archaeological Center ... | <p>B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. () is 14 kilometers long! b. () has many amazing treasures. c. () and visit amazing tourist attractions. d. () often rains there. e. () in the middle of the city. f. () on the River Thames. |
|---|---|



Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My perfect town" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية:

5

- * Where do you live?
- * What things can tourists do in your city?

Assess your progress

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

UNIT 10

REVIEW



Vocabulary

Places in Town



bank



factory



monument



library



shopping mall



square



station



Language Focus

Imperatives:

Affirmative imperatives:

Infinitive



up that trash, please.

Negative imperatives:

Don't + Infinitive



Don't talk loudly, please.



Pronunciation

/aʊ/

grow

show

below

grow

write

/aɪ/

buy

right

time

bike

write

/ɔɪ/

boy

toy

coin

enjoy

point

/eɪ/

make

play

ache

ate

bake



Lesson 1

بنك	مول تجارى
مكتبة	أثر
ميدان	محطة
مطاعم	أطباق
مناجر	عادات

Lessons 2 & 3

علامات	مبان
نبات البردى	مشاهد
مناسبات	أعياد
رمز	فرعون
دليل	أثر
رسومات	تحف
مقبرة	الهيروغليفية

Lesson 4

تائه	طائر أبو منجل
تجار السوق	فروى
فروع	شوال
قضمة / عضه	الحماهير
يخبز	عملة
لعبة	أسفل
مدرسة	ألم

Lessons 5 & 6

مشهور	أماكن جذب سياحى
المركز الأثرى	مسارح
كنوز	مذهل

WRITING TIME

"Alexandria"

lots of things to do – wonderful restaurants

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There are lots of things to do there. You can go to many wonderful restaurants. You can visit different stores and markets. You can spend your time on the beach.

"Life in Ancient Egypt"

monuments – paintings

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Ancient monuments can tell us a lot about the past. Paintings on walls or on papyrus show scenes of daily life. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.

"New Alamein"

tourist attractions – Archaeological Center

New Alamein is an amazing Egyptian city. There are many wonderful tourist attractions and many things to do there. There are the International Park, a big lake, and many shopping malls. You can also go to the Archaeological Center where there are many treasures.

"My perfect town"

wonderful water park – shopping malls

My town is big and beautiful. There is a wonderful water park. It's the perfect place to visit in hot summer days. There are many shopping malls with a big kids area. Kids can go and enjoy playing for free. You can visit food markets, too. You will find foods from all over the world there.

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 (Close – Closes – Is closing – Closed) the window, please.
- 2 Be quiet and (don't – isn't – aren't – weren't) eat in the classroom, please.
- 3 Don't (plays – playing – played – play) football in the street.
- 4 (Weren't – Wasn't – Don't – Didn't) walk on the grass.

2 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح ما تحته خط:

4

- 1 Don't eats in the library. (.....)
- 2 Hurries up! We will miss the bus. (.....)
- 3 Going straight, then turn left. (.....)
- 4 Takes an umbrella with you. (.....)

3 Read and rewrite the following:

اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتي:

4

- 1 Is there a hotel near here, please? (Where...?)
.....
- 2 You shouldn't cross the road without looking. (Don't...)
.....
- 3 Please, can you sit down? (Sit...)
.....
- 4 You have to study well for your exam. (Study)
.....

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child read and correct.
- (3) Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.



Listening



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 There isn't any evidence to tell us about life in Ancient Egypt. ()
- 2 Structures in ancient Egypt were built to celebrate important people. ()
- 3 Ancient Egyptians drew paintings on walls and papyrus. ()
- 4 Ancient Egyptian paintings don't show people's daily life. ()

2 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

- 1 There is a big right next to my school.
- 2 In the zoo, we can help feed the
- 3 It's really in my town.
- 4 It's to go in the water park in my town.



Reading

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- | | |
|---|--|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Monuments tell us about ... 2 Paintings often show ... 3 The sound in the word "go" ... 4 A: What are hieroglyphics? 5 An estimated answer ... | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. () is the same as in the word "below". b. () No, thank you. c. () is a good guess. d. () structures in Ancient Egypt. e. () B: They are symbols and pictures. f. () special occasions and events. |
|---|--|

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market. But he couldn't walk far. His camel offered to help him and take the sack of beans to the market. The camel walked along the road. He turned right, then left, and then he turned right again. The camel didn't recognize the road and he thought he was lost. The camel then met a nice ibis who flew above the land and told him the right way. The camel thanked the ibis and they became friends.

correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

about a camel going to the

a) pool c) stadium d) market

was as he didn't recognize the road.

a) excited c) lost d) helpful

Following questions:

the villager want to do?

the ibis help the camel?



Writing

ds to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

Yam – cuisine – try – local – some of.

– station – town – in – a – my.

Yam – the – International – visit – beautiful.

– know – about – do – we – Egypt?

Following:

ly please

alexandria

ph of FORTY (40) words on "New Alamein" using the
ng elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية:

tourist attractions – Archaeological Center

Unit

11

Getting out in the Fresh Air

الخروج في الهواء الطلق



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- listen, read, research, and write about nature trails.
- recognize adjectives and adverbs.
- learn words about nature.

• نهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادراً على أن:

يقرا ويبحث ويكتب عن المتنزهات الطبيعية.

Unit 11 - A conversation about hiking

Warm up

This unit is about nature and how it is important to go into the fresh air. It is also about going to nature trails like the Red Sea Mountain Trail.

تدور هذه الوحدة حول الطبيعة ومدى أهمية التنزه في الهواء الطلق. تدور أيضًا حول الذهاب إلى المتنزهات الطبيعية مثل متنزه البحر الأحمر الجبلي.

Did you know?

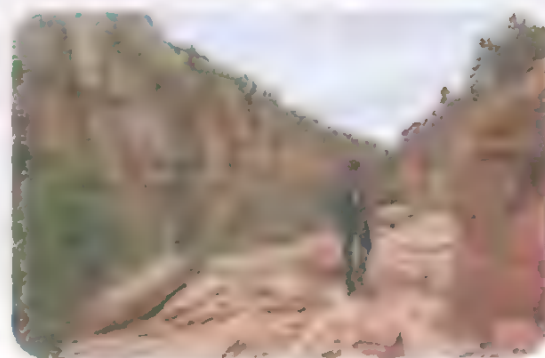
A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is the Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. You can see the famous Colored Canyon there.



ممشى نوبيع في سيناء هو طريق رائع للمشي لمسافات طويلة في مصر. يمكنك من هناك رؤية الوادي الملون الشهير.

I can find it out!

Going into the fresh air is good because it **reduces*** **stress*** and helps improve our **physical*** and **mental*** health.



التنزه في الهواء الطلق جيد لأنه يقلل من التوتر ويحسن

عقلي mental* جسدي physical* توتر stress* يقلل reduce*

STUDY

Lessons 1 & 2

• Getting out in Nature
• Nature Trail Weekend

Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Main Vocabulary



hill



leaf



village



city



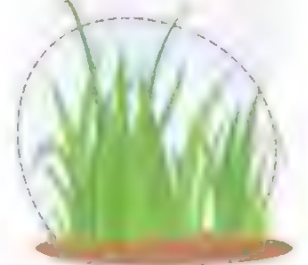
rock



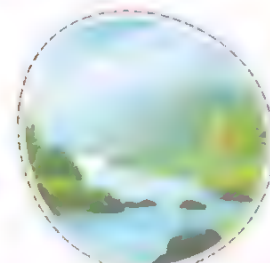
plant



tree



grass



stream

مجرى ماء



Wadi Degla

وادي دجلة



Blue Lagoon

البحيرة الزرقاء

wooden	خشبي	trunk	جذع الشجرة	background	خلفية
views	مناظر	lake	بحيرة	Dahab	دهب (مدينة مصرية)
brave (adj.)	شجاع	invitation	دعوة	diver	غواص
tortoise	سلحفاة	active (adj.)	نشط	designer	مصمم

Let's say it right!

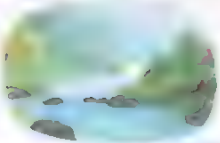




• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (tu) في كلمة (nature) ينطقان /t/ (تش).

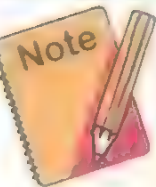
Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs			أفعال منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided	dive	يغطس	dived
contact	يتصل بـ	contacted	invite	يدعو	invited
accept	يقبل	accepted			

take photos	يلتقط صوراً	Guess what?	خمن ماذا؟
like best	يفضل	Bye for now!	إلى اللقاء!
Life's great!	كل شيء بخير.	Can't wait to see you!	لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!

Definitions

	stream	It's like a river, but smaller.	إنه كالنهر، ولكن أصغر.
	tree	It is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.	إنه نبات طويل جداً له فروع وجذع خشبي.
	village	It is much smaller than a town or city.	إنها أصغر بكثير من بلدة أو مدينة.
	rock	It is hard. It is a large stone.	إنها صلبة. إنها حجر كبير.
	nature trail	A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.	مكان تذهب إليه لتتزه في الطبيعة وترى النباتات والحيوانات.



To make plurals, we usually add an -s: لتكوين صيغة الجمع، نقوم بإضافة s:

- house → houses
- If the word ends in -y preceded by a consonant letter, we usually take off the -y and add -ies:
- city → cities
- If the word ends in -s, we usually take off the -s and add -es:
- e.g. leaf → leaves

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية QR code.

Nature Trail Weekend



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From Dina
To Reem
Subject Nature trail weekend

Hi Reem,

How's life?

Guess what? My family and I want to go on a trail⁽¹⁾ to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places.

Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like? Also, what dates⁽²⁾ do you prefer, 13-14 July or 20-21 July?

Bye for now!

Dina



Blue Lagoon

- (1) يذهب في نزهة
(2) تواريخ



Wadi Degla

Parents' tips

Help your child read the email correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكتروني بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

أهلاً ريم،

كيف تجري الأمور؟

خفي ماذا؟ نريد أنا وعائلتي أن نذهب في نزهة إلى وادي دجلة أو البحيرة الزرقاء في دهب. قالت أمي إنني يمكنني اصطحاب صديقة، وأنا أريد اصطحابك! هل تستطيعين المجيء؟ قالت أمي إنني أنا وأنت أن يقرر أي المكانين أفضل. وادي دجلة رائع لأنه يمكنك من رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات، ولكن يمكنك العوم في البحيرة الزرقاء! أنا أعرف أنك تستطيعين المشي بسرعة والسباحة جيداً، إذاً أي متنزه طبيعي تحبين؟ كذلك ما هي التواريخ التي تفضلينها، 13-14 أو 20-21 من يوليو؟

إلى اللقاء!

دينا



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From Reem
To Dina
Subject Re: Nature trail weekend

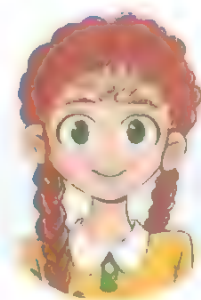
Hi Dina,

Life's great! How are you?

The nature trail trip **wasn't like fun**, and I really want to come! I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive! Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave! Remember when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20-21 July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to **check** everything.

Can't wait to see you!

Reem



(3) يبدو الأمر ممتعاً

(4) يتحقق / يتأكد



Parents' tips

Help your child read the email correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكتروني بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

أهلاً ديناء

كل شيء بخير! كيف حالك؟

تبدو رحلة المتنزه الطبيعي أمراً ممتعاً، وأنا حقاً أريد المجيء. أعتقد أن البحيرة الزرقاء جيدة لأننا يمكننا السباحة والغطس، صحيح أنه يمكنني أن أصبح بسرعة، ولكنك شجاعة للغاية! هل تتذكرون حين غطست من أعلى تلك الصخرة؟ لقد تحدثت للتو مع أمي وعطلة ٢٠-٢١ يوليو جيدة بالنسبة لي، سوف تتصل أمي بأهلك للتحقق من كل شيء.

لا أستطيع الانتظار حتى أراك!

ريم

Language Focus

Adverbs



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Adjectives الصفات	Adverbs الأحوال
We use adjectives to give more information about nouns .	We use adverbs to give more information about verbs .
eg It was a sunny day.	eg She walked slowly down the road.

Forming adverbs

adjective (الصفة) + **ly**....She crossed the road **slowly**.If the adjective ends in **-y**, then delete the **-y** and add **-ily**:إذا انتهت الصفة بـ **-y**، فاحذف **-y** وأضف **-ily**:He did his homework **happily**.

There are some exceptions to the rule:

هناك بعض الاستثناءات للقاعدة:

Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الحال
good	جيد	well	بطريقة جيدة
fast	سريع	fast	بطريقة سريعة
hard	جاد	hard	بجد
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا
early	مبكر	early	مبكرًا

e.g. - She speaks English **well**. (not goodly X)

- I study **hard**. (not hardly X).

- He drove the car **fast**. (not fastly X).

Check point

Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

1 My friend is a nicely person. SB (.....)

2 The tortoise walked slow across the grass. SB (.....)

3 Shorouk is a hard worker. She works hardly. SB (.....)

Parents' tips

Help your child read to form correct adverbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ليكون ظروفًا صحيحة.

PRACTICE

Lessons 1 & 2

14

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My dad speaks Spanish (good – well – goodly – best).
- 2 It was raining (heavier – heavy – heavily – heaviest) when I left home. SB
- 3 The player ran (quick – quickly – quickness – quickest) and won the race.
- 4 Dina is a (bravely – brave – bravest – bravery) diver.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Dina and Reem are best friends. They love to go on trails outdoors. They went on a hike in the desert trail last weekend. The trail was longer than they thought, but it was more beautiful, too. It was around 57 kilometers around the mountain. Dina and Reem walked slowly in the afternoon than they did in the morning because they were tired. In the evening, they camped in a small cave in the mountain. They sang songs and told one another funny stories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The text is about Dina and Reem going for
a) training b) hiking c) swimming d) running
- 2 The pronoun "It" refers to the in the desert.
a) pool b) trail c) square d) mountain

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How long was the trail?
- 4 Why did Reem and Dina walk slowly in the afternoon?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 the – slowly – She – road – crossed.
- 2 see – wait – Don't – you – to!
- 3 like – do – Which – trail – you – best – nature?
- 4 can – Blue – at – You – Lagoon – the – swim.

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child read the text and answer.
- (3) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.

TEST YOURSELF on Lessons 1 & 2



Listening

14

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Sara likes to spend the weekend at the shopping mall. ()
- 2 Sara wants to spend this weekend outdoors. ()
- 3 You can see many animals at Wadi Degla. ()
- 4 You can't swim at the Blue Lagoon. ()



Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

A

- 1 The nature trail trip ...
- 2 A "village" is much smaller ...
- 3 A "stream" is like a river, ...
- 4 A: How did she swim?
- 5 Sahar sings nicely.

B

- a. () B: She swam well.
- b. () She is a nice singer.
- c. () sounds like fun.
- d. () than a town or a city.
- e. () a mountain near the lake.
- f. () but smaller.



Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A nature trail" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

- Where did you go? - What did you do there?

STUDY

Lesson 3

The Red Sea Mountain Trail



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Main Vocabulary



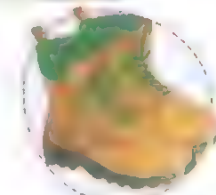
snacks

وجبات خفيفة



hat and sunglasses

قبعة ونظارة شمسية



hiking shoes

حذاء تريض



map

خريطة



water bottle

زجاجة مياه



blanket

بطانية



scarf

وشاح



sweater

سترة

long-distance (adj.)
routes
hikers
tent

طويل المسافة
طرق
متريضين
خيمة

Maaza people
hunting
geography
warm (adj.)

قبيلة معازة
الصيد
جغرافيا (تضاريس)
دافئ

trading
Eastern Desert
prepared (adj.)
sand

التجارة
الصحراء الشرقية
مستعد
رمال

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
preserve	preserved	follow	followed
complete	completed	protect	protected

Definitions

hiking (n)

التزح

a long walk in the countryside

نزهة طويلة في الريف

run for
for centuries

يمتد لمسافة
لقرون

community tourism project
it takes around ten days

مشروع سياحي مجتمعي
يستغرق حوالي ١٠ أيام

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية ال QR code.

Assess your progress

< 50%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance **hiking**⁽¹⁾ trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting **routes**⁽²⁾ in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their **fascinating**⁽³⁾ culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.



- | | |
|-----|---------------------|
| (1) | المشي لمسافات طويلة |
| (2) | طرق |
| (3) | جذاب |

Check point

- How long is the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
- What do the Maaza people do?

Vocabulary Check

Route: is a small, side road that people can move on.

طريق فرعي: طريق جانبي صغير يمضي الأشخاص عليه.

Road: is usually bigger, cars and trucks can move on.

طريق رئيسي: عادة ما يكون أكبر، كالطرق التي تتحرك عليها السيارات والشاحنات.

Parents' tips

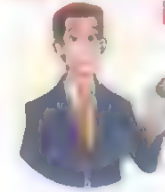
Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة:
إن متزه البحر الأحمر الجبلي أول متزه للمشي لمسافات طويلة يتم افتتاحه في مصر. يمتد لمسافة حوالي 170 كم عبر الجبال الرائعة بالقرب من الغردقة. إنه مشروع سياحي مجتمعي. يساعد المشروع قبيلة معازة المحليون على الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم. يتبع المتزه طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة في الصحراء الشرقية. استخدمت قبيلة معازة هذه الطرق لقرون. يعتنى قبيلة معازة المحليين بالممتزه بعناية ويعملون كمرشدين. يخبرون المتنزهين عن جغرافية هذا المكان الرائع وتاريخه. ويخبرونهم كذلك عن ثقافتهم الرائعة. يستغرق الأمر حوالي عشرة أيام لإكمال المتزه.



Listen, read, and role play:

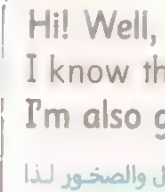
استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Interviewer

Hi Sherif, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

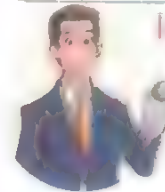
مرحباً شريف، ما الذي تأخذه في متزه البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟



Sherif

Hi! Well, I want to protect my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over! I'm also going to take some snacks from home so I don't get hungry.

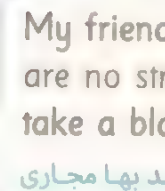
أهلاً حسناً، أريد حماية قدمي لذا سأأخذ بعض أحذية التريض. أعلم أن هناك الكثير من التلال والصخور لذا لا أريد السقوط! سأقوم أيضاً بأخذ بعض الوجبات الخفيفة من المنزل حتى لا أشعر بالجوع.



Interviewer

Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحباً رامى، ما الذي تأخذه في متزه البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟



Interviewer

My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

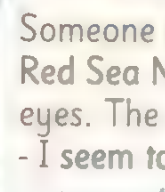
قال صديقي إن الجو يصبح شديد الحرارة على الممشى في الأماكن التي لا توجد بها مجارى مائية، لذلك سأأخذ قبعة لرأسي وسأحضر أيضاً بطانية في حال أصبت بالبرد في الليل.



Interviewer

Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

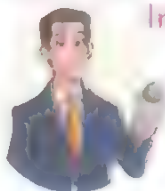
مرحباً لاما، ما الذي تأخذه في متزه البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟



Lama

Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles - I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be prepared.

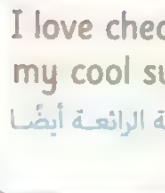
أخبرني أحدهم أنه يمكنك أحياناً أن تصاب بالرمال في عينيك على متزه البحر الأحمر الجبلي، لذلك سأأخذ وشاحاً لحماية رأسي وعيني. الشيء الآخر المهم بالنسبة لي هو أن آخذ الكثير من زجاجات المياه ويبدو أنني أشرب أكثر من الآخرين لذلك أريد أن أكون مستعدة.



Interviewer

Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحباً نسمة، ماذا الذي تأخذه في متزه البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟



Nesma

I love checking the route so I'm taking a map. And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

أنا أحب التحقق من الطريق لذلك سأأخذ خريطة. وسوف آخذ نظاراتي الشمسية الرائعة أيضاً لحماية عيني. سيكون هذا ممتعاً!

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

We are on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. Here what we are taking on the trail. Sherif is taking sunglasses to protect his eyes, as the sun can get very bright on the walk. Ramy is taking a water bottle, as he gets thirsty when he hikes. Shaza is really good at reading the map to tell us where to go. We should take a scarf to protect our heads and necks, as there's a wind in the afternoon.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The text is about on the trail.
a) swimming b) diving c) hiking d) fishing
- Sherif needs to take to protect his eyes.
a) sunglasses b) water bottle c) map d) rackets

3 Answer the following questions:

- What can we do with a map?
- Mention what they are taking on the trail.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- thirsty - hike - I - when - get - I
.....
- the - to - Take - eyes - sunglasses - protect - your.
.....
- Sea - Mountain - Where - Red - the - Trail - is?
.....
- look - carefully - The Maaza people - after - trail - the.
.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail
.....
- The red Sea Mountain Trail is 170 kilometers
.....

Parents' tips

- Help your child read the text and answer.
- Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ل يكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

Listening

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

- The Red Sea Mountain is in Egypt.
- The Red Sea Mountain Trail is around kilometers long.
- The Red Sea Mountain Trail though mountains near Hurghada.
- The Maaza people preserve their and share it with hikers.

Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- | | |
|--|--|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> I get thirsty when I hike, ... A map is useful ... You should take a scarf ... "Hiking" is a long walk ... The sun is shining brightly today, ... | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> () to protect your head and neck. () so remember to take a hat and sunglasses. () so I always take a water bottle. () the wind and sand. () in the countryside. () because it tells you where to go. |
|--|--|

Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "The Red Sea Mountain Trail" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

Fact File

Where is it?	In Egypt near Hurghada.
How long is it?	Around 170 km.

Assess your progress

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

Language Focus

The suffixes -ful and -fully

Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

1 We can change the noun into an adjective by adding -ful.

eg. help → helpful care → careful

2 We can change the noun into an adverb by adding -fully.

eg. hope → hopefully pain → painfully

Notice the formation of adjectives and adverbs in the following table:

لاحظ تكوين الصفات والظروف في الجدول الآتي:

Word	Adjective	Adverb
wonder	wonderful	wonderfully
beauty	beautiful	beautifully
joy	joyful	joyfully
meaning	meaningful	meaningfully
pain	painful	painfully
care	careful	carefully
stress	stressful	stressfully
thought	thoughtful	thoughtfully

Check point

Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
joy
.....	carefully
.....	stressful	.....
pain
.....	beautifully

Parents' tips

Help your child use the suffixes "-ful" and "-fully" correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم اللاحقة «-ful» و «-fully» بطريقة صحيحة.

Pronunciation

Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

You make the /n/ sound by blocking the air in your mouth with the front of your tongue.

أنت تُصدر الصوت /n/، عن طريق سد الهواء في فمك بمقدمة لسانك.

n /n/



nose



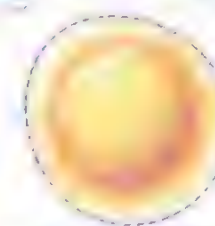
know



natural



ton



sun

You make the /ŋ/ sound by blocking the air with the back of your tongue.

ng /ŋ/



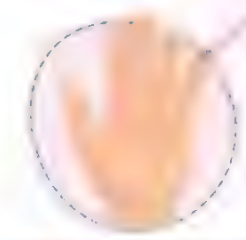
sing



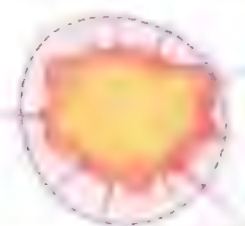
hiking



tongue



finger



bang



ring



rang



king

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Adding mixed numbers

Mixed numbers are numbers which are whole numbers and fractions.

الأرقام المختلطة هي أرقام صحيحة وكسور.

e.g. $6\frac{2}{3}$ $1\frac{1}{5}$ $2\frac{3}{4}$

e.g. One nature trail is $2\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long, and another nature trail is $3\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long.

How long are the nature trails in total?

$$2\frac{1}{2} + 3\frac{1}{2} = ?$$

The answer:

1 Add the whole numbers first: $2 + 3 = 5$

قم بجمع الأرقام الصحيحة.

2 Add the fractions together: $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$

قم بجمع الكسور.

3 Add this to the whole number 5, and the total is 6.

قم بعد ذلك بجمع الرقم الصحيح والرقم الكلي هو 6.

Parents' tips

Help your child add mixed numbers correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يجمع الأرقام المختلطة بطريقة صحيحة.

PRACTICE



Lesson 4

14

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

- 1 She gave me a (beauty – beautiful – beautifulness – beautifully) present. I thanked her for it.
- 2 My leg hurts (pain – painful – paining – painfully). Please, call a doctor.
- 3 I am very (care – caring – careful – carefully) when I ride the bike.
- 4 When the phone rang, I heard a big (ring – king – bang – sing).

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My dad works for 12 hours a day. He says it's so **stressful**. Yesterday, he had a holiday and we went to the park. When we arrived, dad told me to be careful when I touch the plants. There was a brown bird on the tree. It was the most beautiful bird I have ever seen. It could sing beautifully. There were rabbits in the park. We gave them some carrots and they ate hungrily. There was a dog running with a ball joyfully.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Everything in the park was
a) stressful b) painful c) wonderful d) careful
- 2 The word "stressful" means
a) nice b) very tiring c) pretty d) quiet

4 Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did the rabbits eat the carrots?
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

- 1 The – stands – quietly – rabbit – park – the – in.
- 2 hungrily – bowl – ate – from – the – the.
- 3 big – wearing – ring – a – king – a – the?
- 4 walked – the trail – happily – happily – along.

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child read the text and answer.
- (3) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF

on Lesson 4



Listening

11

استمع وأكمل:

4

1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Lama read a yesterday.
- 2 The story was about a
- 3 The king was wearing a big
- 4 The phone and he heard a big bang.



Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

A

- 1 She packed her suitcase ...
- 2 The sound /ŋ/ in "king" ...
- 3 The noun for the adjective "beautiful" ...
- 4 It was the most wonderful animal ...
- 5 My dad works for 12 hours.

B

- a. () is the same in "tongue".
- b. () I saw on the trail.
- c. () with a lot of care.
- d. () He says it's very stressful.
- e. () is "beauty".
- f. () is the same in "ton".



Writing

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 how long are the nature trails
- 2 he's not looking at the sun

Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

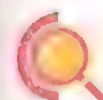
STUDY



Lessons 5 & 6



Writing



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Hi Malak! Are you free on the weekend? ●

أهلاً ملك! هل أنت متفرغة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

I'm good, thanks. Sure!

What should we do? أنا بخير، شكراً بالتأكيد! ماذا سنفعل؟

My mom and dad want to do a desert hike⁽¹⁾.

Do you want to come? ●

سيذهب أبي وأمي إلى جولة في الصحراء. هل تريدان المجيء؟

Yes, that sounds like fun! ● نعم، يبدو الأمر ممتعاً!

Great, should we pick you up⁽²⁾? We don't

want to go when it's too hot.

عظيم، هل أصطحبك؟ لا نريد أن نذهب و الجو حار جداً.

How about me coming to your house? ماذا لو أتيت إلى منزلك؟

Good idea!

فكرة جيدة!

What should I bring⁽³⁾?

ماذا علي أن أحضر؟

Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater.

حذاء التريض، مياه وسترة.

OK!

حسناً!

Great! Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm.

عظيم! هيا نتقابل يوم الجمعة الساعة ٤ مساءً؟

Can't wait!

لا أستطيع الانتظار.

Parents' tips

Help your child read the chat correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المحادثة الهاتفية بطريقة صحيحة.

How to write a text message

- 1 Use phrases to talk about plans: (Are you free on the weekend?/ That sounds like fun./ That sounds great./ Cool!/ Awesome!).

استخدم العبارات للتحدث عن الخطط: (هل أنت متفرغ في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟/ هذا يبدو ممتعًا./ هذا يبدو رائعًا./ حسنًا!/ رائع!).

- 2 Use set phrases for making suggestions: (How about/ What about meeting up?/ Let's meet at 3.).

استخدم عبارات محددة لتقديم الاقتراحات: (ماذا عن / ماذا عن اللقاء؟ / هيا نتقابل في الساعة ٣.).

- 3 Use emojis to make the conversation fun: Use emojis to show things you want to represent.

e.g. 🌵 a cactus for the desert.

استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لجعل المحادثة ممتعة: استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لإظهار الأشياء التي تريد تمثيلها، على سبيل المثال 🌵 صبار يدل على الصحراء.

Check point

Write a text message to your friend of FORTY (40) words about "Inviting her to visit you" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب رسالة نصية من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

want to come - can't wait



Project



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



cactus
نبات الصبار



palm tree
نخيل



desert snail
حلزون الصحراء



tamarisk tree
شجرة الطرفاء



jerboa
جرboa

Hiking in the desert can be wonderful and relaxing. The sunlight and the natural landscapes of the mountains are fascinating. You can do many activities along with hiking such as camping and swimming in the lake. There are amazing lake views where you can exercise and relax. You can also find amazing desert creatures along the trail such as desert snail and jerboa.



Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية ال QR code.

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

A: Hi Malak! Are you(1)..... on the weekend?

B: Sure! What(2)..... we do?

A: My mom and dad want to do a(3)..... hike. Do you want to come?

B: Yes, that sounds like fun!

A: What should I bring?

B: Hiking shoes, water, and a(4).....

2 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

1 are you free on the weekend, malak?

2 Let's meet on friday at 4 pm

3 Write a text message to your friend of FORTY (40) words about "Meeting up" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب رسالة نصية من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

7

- Are you free?

- How about?



Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child listen and complete.
- (2) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع وأكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 Wael was making a presentation with Hamza. ()
- 2 Hamza suggested that they would spend the evening together. ()
- 3 Wael thought it's a bad idea. ()
- 4 Hamza and Wael will play chess at the café. ()



Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

A

- 1 A Are you free on the weekend?
- 2 A What should I bring?
- 3 A How about going on a trail?
- 4 Great! Let's meet on ...
- 5 How about ...

B

- a. () Friday at 4 pm.
- b. () people in quiet areas.
- c. () Sure, I am!
- d. () getting out into nature?
- e. () B: Great idea!
- f. () B: Hiking shoes and a sweater.



Writing

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 we - up - Should - you - pick?
- 2 hiking - You'll - shoes - need - and - sunglasses.
- 3 like - lots - fun - That - sounds - of.
- 4 meeting - What - up - about - tonight?



Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 79%

80 : 100%



Vocabulary



Language Focus

Forming adverbs

adjective + ly...

eg happy → happily

If the adjective ends in -y, then delete the -y and add -ily :

eg



He did his homework happily.

There are some exceptions to the rule:

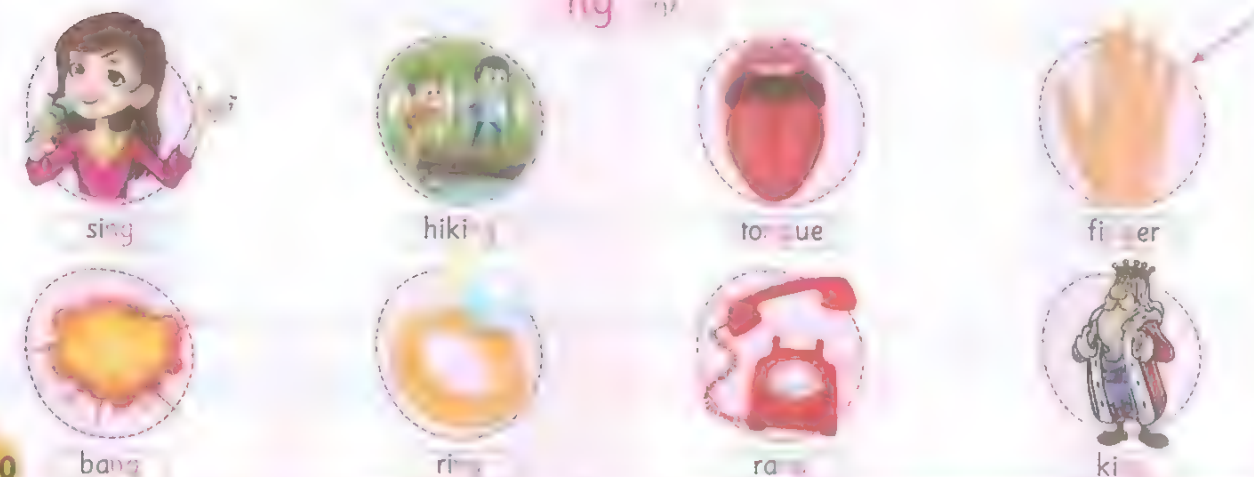
Adjective	Adverb
good	well
fast	fast
hard	hard
late	late
early	early

Pronunciation

n /n/



ng /ŋ/



Lessons 1 & 2

جذع شجرة	مدينة
ورقة شجرة	قرية
نباتات	تل
صخرة	مجرى مائي
حشائش	شجرة

Lesson 1

خريطة	وشاح
حذاء تريض	زجاجة مياة
وجبات خفيفة	بطانية
قبعة ونظارة	التجارة
جغرافيا (تضاريس)	الصيد

Lesson 1

طبيعي	شمس
يعرف	طن
أنف	انفجار
لسان	أصابع
ملك	التريض
خاتم	رن

Lessons 5 & 6

الجربوع	حلزون الصحراء
شجرة الطرفاء	نخيل

WRITING TIME

"Nature trail weekend"

natural landscapes – lots of animals

Last week, I went on a trail with my family to the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. We started early in the morning. There were many wonderful natural landscapes. We could see lots of animals. We swam in the lake and the water was deep and blue.

"The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

How long is it? – What can hikers do there?

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 km through the mountains near Hurghada. Hikers can learn about the geography and history of this wonderful place and about its fascinating culture.

"Hiking in the desert"

wonderful and relaxing – camping and swimming

Hiking in the desert can be wonderful and relaxing. The sunlight and the natural landscapes of the mountains are fascinating. You can do many activities along with hiking such as camping and swimming in the lake. You can also find amazing desert creatures along the trail such as desert snail and jerboa.

"Tools to have for hiking"

hiking shoes - hat and sunglasses

Hiking is one of my favorite activities. There are many tools that you need to take with you while hiking. Hiking shoes are important because you move a lot and you need to feel comfortable. You will need sunglasses and a hat too, especially when it's hot.

PRACTICE

More on Grammar

12

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 Sarah is a (careful – carefully – is caring – care) person.
- 2 I ran (quickest – quick – quickly – quickness) to the station.
- 3 You look (happiness – happy – happiest – happily).
- 4 I speak English (wellness – well – good – best).

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

4

- 1 Samir is an active worker. He works hardly. (.....)
- 2 Salma is a quickly runner. (.....)
- 3 Jailan speaks polite. (.....)
- 4 Hatem is a clever designer. He designs cleverest. (.....)

3 Read and rewrite the following:

اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتي:

4

- 1 My Spanish isn't very good. (speak)
.....
- 2 He drives carefully. (careful)
.....
- 3 Lara is happy. She is eating her birthday cake. (happily)
.....
- 4 Mr. Mahmoud is a good teacher. (teaches)
.....

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and choose.
- (2) Help your child read and correct.
- (3) Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد كتابة الجمل أو الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.

183

182



Listening



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- 1 The Red Sea Mountain Trail follows a modern route in Egypt. ()
- 2 The Maaza people look after the trail carefully and work as guides. ()
- 3 The Maaza people never talk to hikers. ()
- 4 The Maaza people tell the hikers about their fascinating culture. ()

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

4

- 1 Aser invites Ali for a
- 2 Ali thinks it's a idea.
- 3 Ali and Aser are meeting at pm.
- 4 Ali and Aser are having a drink at Latino



Reading

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 A 'tree' is
 - 2 A: What dates do you prefer?
 - 3 A 'nature trail' is ...
 - 4 The sound /ŋ/ in "finger" ...
 - 5 My sister speaks French...

- B**
- a. () is the same in "tongue".
 - b. () very well.
 - c. () a very tall plant.
 - d. () very good.
 - e. () B: 20-21 July weekend is good for me.
 - f. () a place you go for a hike in nature.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Dina wrote an email to Reem to invite her to go on a trail. Dina doesn't want to go on a trail alone. They can decide which they like best, Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Wadi Degla is cool. They can see lots of animals, but they can swim at the Blue Lagoon! Reem prefers the Blue Lagoon because they can swim and dive. Dina is a brave swimmer; she could dive from a high rock. They decided to go at the weekend 20-21 July.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 There are lots of in Wadi Degla.
a) stars b) parks c) animals d) games
- 2 Dina can swim
a) slowly b) bravely c) quickly d) fast



Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why does Reem prefer the Blue Lagoon?
- 4 What is the general idea of the text?



Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 to – Take – eyes – sunglasses – your – protect – the.
.....
- 2 about – How – coming – house – your – to?
.....
- 3 but – A stream – river, – like – a – smaller – is.
.....
- 4 beautifully – She – show – sang – the – during.
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 Dina and reem had a good time on the trail
.....
- 2 what did you do on your trip
.....

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words on "A trip with my family" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

Wadi Degla – sunglasses



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
- think about environmental responsibility.
- learn about natural and man-made resources.
- practice using prepositions of time.
- listen to a conversation.
- learn about different types of triangles.
- read and say words with the "th" sound.
- think about his/her perfect vacation.
- write a diary entry for his/her best day on vacation.
- write an ad for a vacation destination.

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادراً على أن:

• يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الإجازات

• يفكر في المسؤولية البيئية

• يتعلم عن المصادر الطبيعية والاصطناعية

• يتدرب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

• يستمع إلى محادثة

• يتعلم عن أنواع مختلفة من المثلثات

• يقرأ وينطق كلمات بصوت الـ "th"

• يفكر في إجازته المثالية

• يكتب يومياته عن أفضل يوم له في

• يكتب إعلاناً عن وجهته لقضاء عطلة



This unit is about vacations, things you take on vacation or places you go on vacation. It talks about natural resources and man-made resources. It is about trips and diaries as well.

لموارد الطبيعة والموارد التي من صنع الإنسان. كما تدور الوحدة عن الرحلات والمذكرات اليومية.

Did you know?

Egypt is one of the most popular vacation destinations* in the world. Millions of tourists visit Egypt every year. Cairo, Luxor, and Hurghada are among the most popular tourist destinations in the world.

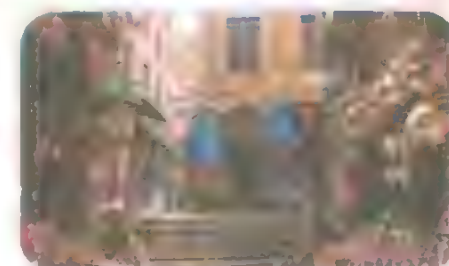
مصر هي واحدة من أكثر الوجهات المشهورة لقضاء العطلات في العالم. ملايين السياح يزورون مصر كل عام. تعد القاهرة والأقصر والغردقة من بين الوجهات السياحية الأكثر شهرة في العالم.



I can find it out!

The best places to visit in Egypt are: The Great Pyramids of Giza, The Egyptian Museum, Luxor Temple, Karnak Temple, Valley of the Kings, Khan Al Khalili bazaar, The Blue Hole in Dahab, and Sharm El-Sheikh.

أفضل الأماكن التي يمكنك زيارتها في مصر هي: أهرامات الجيزة، المتحف المصري، معبد الأقصر، معبد الكرنك، وادي الملوك، بازار خان الخليلي، بلو هول في دهب، وشرم الشيخ.



Khan Al Khalili bazaar



The Blue Hole in Dahab

destinations*

وجهات

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



ticket



suitcase



hotel

tourist
سائحpassport
جواز سفرswimming pool
حمام سباحة

trip	رحلة	husband	زوج	business	عمل
vacation	إجازة	India	الهند	Singapore	سنغافورة
luckily	لحسن الحظ	floor	دور	view	منظر
huge (adj.)	ضخم	roof	سطح	flight	رحلة جوية
bay	خليج	busy (adj.)	مزدحم	island	جزيرة
theme park	مدينة الملاهي	vanilla	فانيليا	Japan	اليابان
airport	مطار	camera	كاميرا	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
receive	يستقبل	received	يصل
relax	يستريح	relaxed	يحمّر أمتعة
		pack	يجمع
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
get	يحصل على	got	يجد
		find	يوجد

straight away

على الفور

take about six hours

تستغرق حوالي ست ساعات

go on a boat trip

يذهب في رحلة على متن قارب

high-rise buildings

مبان شاهقة الارتفاع

in the middle of

في المنتصف

take photos

يلتقط الصور



Think

What does "Take only photos, leave only footprints" mean?

It means don't take anything you find in the woods ... like flowers, fungi, roots, animals, small trees, etc. But you can take pictures of them with your camera. The "leave only footprints" part means don't leave any trash behind you except for your footprints.

ماذا يعني «التقط صورًا فقط، اترك آثار أقدام فقط»؟

هذا يعني عدم أخذ أي شيء تجده في الغابة ... مثل الزهور، والفطريات، والجذور، والحيوانات، والأشجار الصغيرة، وما إلى ذلك، ولكن يمكنك التقاط صور لها بالكاميرا. يعني جزء «اترك آثار أقدام فقط» عدم ترك أي قمامة خلفك باستثناء آثار أقدامك.



Let's say it right!

«لاحظ أن حرف ال (s) في كلمة (island) حرف صامت (silent) لا ينطق.

«لاحظ أن حرفي ال (gh) في كلمة (flight) حرفان صامتان (silent) لا ينطقان.

Vocabulary Check

لاحظ أنه يمكننا تكوين صفة من كلمتين بوضع ال (-) بينهما:

شاهق الارتفاع (high-rise adj) = ارتفاع (rise n) + عالٍ (high adj)

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية ال QR code.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

From Nadiax@mail.com
To Samiax@mail.com
Subject My trip

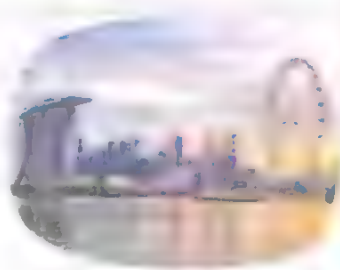
Dear Samia,
Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here – about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel⁽¹⁾ room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool⁽²⁾ on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived – we got our suitcases⁽³⁾ straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise⁽⁴⁾ buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park⁽⁵⁾. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets⁽⁶⁾ and passports and pack our suitcases again!

Love,
Nadia



- (1) فندق
(2) حمام سباحة
(3) حقائب السفر
(4) شاهق الارتفاع
(5) حديقة الملاهي
(6) تذاكر

Parents' tips

Help your child read the email and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكتروني ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

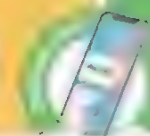
استلمت الأم اليوم بريد إلكتروني من أختها نادية وزوجها هاني. هما في رحلة عمل حول العالم. كان نادية وهاني في الهند الأسبوع الماضي، وهما في سنغافورة هذا الأسبوع. تقرأ الأم البريد الإلكتروني بصوت عالٍ لابنتها رنا وابنها علي.

عزيزتي سامية،
مرحبًا بكم جميعًا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالي 36 درجة. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندقية جميلة. نحن في الطابق 42. المنظر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ. يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالي ست ساعات، لكنها كانت مريحة وكلانا تار. لم يستغرق عبور المطار وقتًا طويلًا عندما وصلنا - لقد حملنا حقائبنا على الفور.

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من المباني الشاهقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء. تعد حدائق الخليج مكانًا خاصًا جدًا حيث توجد الزهور والنباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد أمضينا وقتًا طويلًا هناك. لقد نسيتنا حقًا أننا في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

بالأمس، ذهبنا في رحلة بالقرب من بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر. يوجد مدينة ملاهي. كان الأمر ممتع للغاية! بعد ذلك قمنا بزيارة متحف الآيس كريم! تناولت آيس كريم «ملكة النحل» وهو الفانيليا والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائعًا! أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بخير. سنسافر إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل لك بريدًا إلكترونيًا آخر عند وصولنا. الآن علي أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!

PRACTICE



Lesson 1

11

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- A
- We have got a lovely hotel room ...
 - I always take my phone ...
 - The flight from India ...
 - Singapore is a wonderful city.
 - Gardens by the Bay is ...
- B
- () I had a "Queen Bee" ice cream.
 - () There're a lot of high-rise buildings there.
 - () really a special place.
 - () on the 42nd floor.
 - () so I can take photos.
 - () took about six hours.

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

4

1 are – Where – Hany – Uncle – Aunt – and – Nadia?

2 swimming – the roof – a huge – on – There's – pool.

3 lots – buildings – of – There – high-rise – are.

4 tomorrow – We – fly – to – will – Japan.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

1 We will fly to japan tomorrow

2 Where did you stay in singapore

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and match.

(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



Listening

15

استمع واكمل:

4

1 Listen and complete:

Mom : Where did you go on your(1).....?

Nadia : We were in India last week. This week, we are in Singapore.

Mom : What is(2)..... about the city?

Nadia : There are lots of high-rise(3)..... .The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place.

Mom : Singapore is a wonderful city. What did you do there?

Nadia : We went on a boat(4)..... to an island where there is a theme park.



Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Nadia and her husband Hany are on vacation in Singapore. It's hot – about 36 degrees. They stay in a lovely hotel room on the 42nd floor. The hotel is special. There's a huge swimming pool on the **roof** of the hotel. The view is beautiful and they can see the beach. Yesterday, they went on a boat trip to an island. There is a theme park. After that, they visited the museum of ice cream! They had a "Queen Bee" ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nadia and Hany are
a) at work b) at home c) on vacation d) at a friend's house
- 'Roof' means the part of the hotel.
a) low b) deep c) top d) bottom

Answer the following questions:

- Why is the hotel special?
- What is "Queen Bee" ice cream?



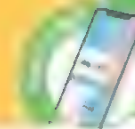
Writing

3 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My trip to Singapore" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من أربعون (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

took about six hours – see the beach



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Resources

Natural resources

Materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.

مواد أو أشياء يمكن أن نجدها في الطبيعة. الأشجار والأحجار أمثلة على المصادر الطبيعية.



trees



stones



sunlight

ضوء الشمس



gold

ذهب



sand



water

Man-made resources

مصادر من صنع الإنسان

Materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

مواد أو أشياء صنعها البشر. الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس القطنية أمثلة على المصادر من صنع الإنسان.



plastic bottle

زجاجة بلاستيكية



cotton clothes

ملابس قطنية



plastic plates

أطباق بلاستيكية



bicycle

دراجة

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية ال QR code.



Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his **galabeya** and **leather shoes**. He boils some water for tea and eats some **bread** and fruit.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the — will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his **crops**. Today, Farouk is harvesting the **grain**, putting it into **baskets** made from **reeds**, and taking it to sell at the market.



Natural resources		Man-made resources	
water	مياه	galabeya	جلابية
tea	شاي	leather shoes	حذاء مصنوع من الجلد
fruit	فاكهة	bread	خبز
sun	الشمس	baskets	سلال
Nile	نهر النيل		
crops	محاصيل		
grain	حبوب		
reeds	قصب		

Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by **plane**. Today, she is packing her **suitcase**. She knows that there is often **rain** in Canada, so she is taking her **umbrella**. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a **sweater**. Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the **sea**, but she could swim in a **river** or a **lake** if she wanted to.



Natural resources		Man-made resources	
rain	مطر	plane	طائرة
sea	بحر	suitcase	حقبة سفر
river	نهر	umbrella	شمسية
lake	بحيرة	sweater	سترة

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.
الترجمة:

• فاروق مزارع في أسوان. كل صباح، يستيقظ ويرتدي الجلابية والحذاء الجلدي. يغلي بعض الماء للشاي ويأكل بعض الخبز والفاكهة. لأن «فاروق» يعيش في أسوان، يعرف أن الشمس ستشرق في معظم الأيام. إنه محظوظ لأنه يعيش على ضفاف النيل الخصبة حتى يتمكن من استخدام الماء لمحاصيله. واليوم يحصد فاروق الحبوب ويضعها في سلال مصنوعة من القصب ويأخذها ليبيعه في السوق.
• ريم ذاهبة في إجازة. ستسافر إلى كندا بالطائرة. اليوم، تحزم حقبتها. إنها تعلم أنه غالباً ما تهطل الأمطار في كندا، لذا فهي تأخذ معها الشمسية. يمكن أن يكون الجو بارداً أيضاً، لذا فهي تحزم سترة. تحب ريم السباحة وسألت صديقتها في كندا عما إذا كان هناك مكان يمكنها السباحة فيه. قالت صديقتها إنها لا تعيش بالقرب من البحر، لكنها تستطيع السباحة في نهر أو بحيرة إذا أرادت ذلك.

PRACTICE



Lesson 2

11

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

Read and match (A) with (B):

5 اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

1 Natural resources are things ...

2 Plastic bottles and cotton clothes ...

3 Reem is going on vacation.

4 Man-made resources are things ...

5 Sand, sunlight, and water ...

B

a. () that humans have made.

b. () are natural resources.

c. () we can find in nature.

d. () are man-made resources.

e. () trees and stones.

f. () She is traveling to Canada.

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 are – clothes – **Cotton** – resources – man-made.

2 resources – **Where** – find – can – we – natural?

3 are – **Gold** – sand – natural – and – resources.

4 eats – **Farouk** – bread – and – fruits – some.

Punctuate the following:

2 ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 Reem is traveling to canada by plane

where does farouk live?

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and match.

(2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

Listening

15

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Reem is going on a business trip to Canada. ()
- 2 Reem is traveling to Canada by train. ()
- 3 It never rains in Canada. ()
- 4 Reem loves swimming. ()

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. He wakes up early every day in the morning. He puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruits. In Aswan, the sun shines almost all the year. Farouk's farming land is on the fertile river banks of the Nile. So he uses the Nile's water for growing his crops. Last week, Farouk was ~~harvesting~~ his crops. He produced around two tons of grains. He put it into big reed baskets to sell them in the market.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The verb "harvest" means to crops.
a) grow b) eat c) cook d) collect
- 2 Farouk stored his crops in baskets.
a) plastic b) reed c) glass d) mud

4 Answer the following questions:

- 1 How does Farouk spend his day?
- 2 What does Farouk use the Nile's water for?

Writing

5

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Resources" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من أربعون (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

What are natural resources?

Give two or more examples of man-made resources.

Assess your progress

< 50%

50 : 64%

65 : 84%

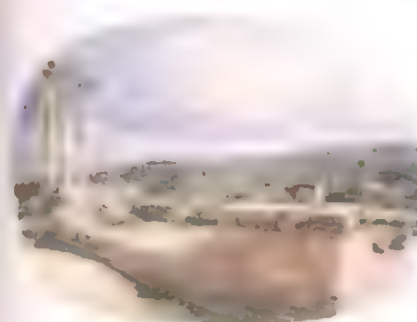
85 : 100%



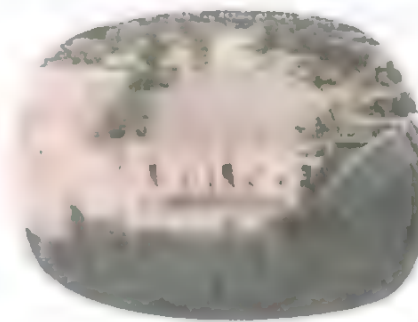
Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main Vocabulary



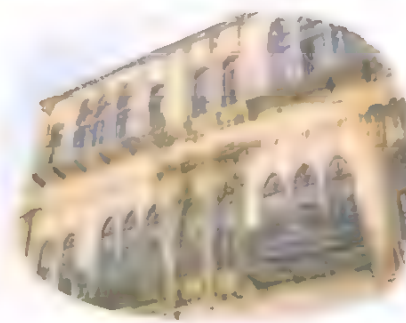
Amman Citadel



Roman Amphitheater



Archaeological Museum



Abu Jaber Museum

متحف أبو جابر



Dead Sea

البحر الميت

Zambia	زامبيا	leaflet	منشور	Jordan	الأردن
Amman	عمان	traditional (تقليدي)	تقليدي	Jordanian (أردني)	أردني
tour	جولة	local (محلي)	محلي	day trip	رحلة نهائية
ancient (adj.)	قديم	culture	ثقافة	art	فن
crafts	مصنوعات	mud	طين	diary	مذكرات يومية
chance	فرصة	handicrafts	أعمال يدوية	stalls	أكشاك
rug	سجادة صغيرة	tour guide	مرشد سياحي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
explore يستكشف	explored	discover يكتشف	discovered
describe يصف	described	wander يتجول	wandered
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
spend يقضي	spent	leave يغادر	left

desert tours	جولات في الصحراء	check in	يسجل دخول
free time	وقت فراغ	head out of	يخرج من
trading center	مركز تجاري	the best ever	الأفضل على الإطلاق
bus ride	ركوب الحافلة	quite quickly	بسرعة كبيرة

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حروف (tion) في كلمة (traditional) تنطق // (شن).

Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ أن (arrive in) تأتي مع الأماكن الكبيرة (الدول / المدن / القرى / القارات) مثل (Egypt - Cairo - Jordan).
- وأن (arrive at) تأتي مع الأماكن الداخلية بالمدينة (school - shopping mall - supermarket).
- لاحظ أن (discover) تأتي مع الأماكن التي يتم اكتشاف وجودها للمرة الأولى، وأن (explore) تأتي مع الأماكن التي نرغب في معرفتها جيدًا ولكنها في الأصل معلومة ومعروفة.

Parents tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية QR code.

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Desert trip to Jordan

October 4 - 8

Day 1: Arrive in Amman and **check in** to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a **traditional** Jordanian dinner in the evening.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a **day trip** to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

Check point

- Where did they have dinner on the first day?
- Why is the Dead Sea special?

Parents tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:
 • اليوم الأول: نصل إلى عمان ونسجل الدخول إلى فندقنا في وسط المدينة. أستمع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة قبل أن نلتقي في مطعم Memphis لتناول عشاء أردني تقليدي في المساء.
 • اليوم الثاني: نستمع اليوم بجولة في عمان، قمر بزيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المدرج الروماني والمتحف الأثري. بعد تناول وجبة غداء في وقت متأخر في مطعم محلي، يمكنك قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء تتجول في العديد من الأسواق الملونة في عمان.
 • اليوم الثالث: اليوم نخرج من المدينة في رحلة نهائية إلى السلط. حوالي ساعة من عمان، في بلدة السلط القديمة ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من الفنون والمصنوعات التقليدية للشراء. ستزور متحف أبو جابر لاكتشاف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجاري مهم.
 • اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت. يوجد الكثير من الملح في هذا البحر بحيث يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا لبشرتك.
 • اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة فطور مريحة، نغادر الساعة 11 صباحًا لنقود ثلاث ساعات عائدين إلى عمان. ستوقف في الطريق لتناول طعام الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار الساعة 5 مساءً.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Thursday, October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history – I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to **wander** through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian **handicrafts** from the **stalls**. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

Check point

1 Which day was Nahla's best day?

2 What did Nahla buy?

Tip! A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

المذكرات هي كتاب تدون فيه الأشياء التي تحدث لك كل يوم. اليوميات هي جزء من الكتابة في المذكرة.



Think!

I think it is a good idea to join a tour when you are on vacation in a different country, because a tour group can help you explore the history, architecture, or even the food of a new place.

أعتقد أنه من الجيد الانضمام إلى حولة عندما تكون في إجازة في بلد مختلف، لأن المجموعة السياحية يمكن أن تساعدك في استكشاف التاريخ أو الهندسة المعمارية أو حتى طعام مكان جديد.

Parents' tips

Help your child read the diary correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المذكرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة: كان اليوم أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أحب أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ – أنا أذهب دائماً إلى المتحف في وطني، لذلك كان اليوم يوماً مميزاً بالنسبة لي. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. لقد استمعنا إلى الموسيقى في الطريق ومضى الوقت بسرعة كبيرة. عندما وصلنا، أنيحت لنا الفرصة لتتجول في الشوارع واشترى العديد من الناس الأعمال اليدوية التقليدية للأردنيين من الأكشاك. اشترت سجادة جميلة ملونة. صالح (مرشدنا السياحي) كان لطيفاً جداً وأخذنا إلى الحافلة من أجل حق لا أضطر إلى حملها! كان ذلك من حسن حظي لأنني قضيت ساعات في المتحف!



Listen, point, and say:

اسمع، أشر وقل:

Prepositions of Time (on / at / in)

1 We use **on** with **days of the week** and for **special days**, and **special times**:

e.g.



I go swimming **on** Mondays.

I give my mother a present **on** Mother's Day.

أعطي والدتي هدية في عيد الأم.



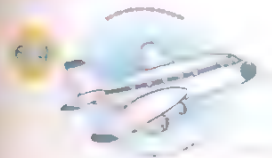
My birthday is **on** June 1st.

عيد ميلادي في الأول من يونيو.

2

We use **at** with **times**, and to say **at night**, and **at lunchtime**:

نستخدم (at) مع الأوقات، ولنقول (في الليل) و (وقت الغداء):



Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.

We play basketball **at** lunchtime.



3

We use **in** with **months**, **seasons**, and **years**, and also with **years of age**:

نستخدم (in) مع الشهور والفصول والسنوات وأيضاً مع أوقات اليوم:



We visit our cousins **in** June.

I was born **in** 2010.



They arrived **in** the morning.

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The film starts (in – of – on – at) 7.30.
- The restaurant opened (at – in – for – on) 2002.
- Her birthday is (in – on – about – at) May 22nd.

Parents' tips

Help your child use "at - on - in" correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم "at - on - in" بطريقة صحيحة.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، أشر وتبادل الأدوار:



Boy

Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

Ayman

On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.



Girl

Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

Yes please, that sounds good!

نعم من فضلك، يبدو ذلك جيدًا!



Dad

Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

Fareed



Dad

Yes, that's right.

نعم، هذا صحيح.

OK, thanks Dad.

Fareed



حسنًا، شكرًا أبي.



Mom

Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

OK Mom, I'll be ready.

Talia



Sherif

Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

نعم، هذا جيد شريف. شكرًا لتذكيري.

Mom



Sara

Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

سوف نذهب في يوليو، سارة. لم يمض وقت طويل الآن.

Mom



Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the mini-dialogs and role-play them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثات القصيرة ويعيد تمثيلها بطريقة صحيحة.

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

4

- On, we arrived in Amman.
- The landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon.
- We went to our and checked in.
- We had at the Memphis restaurant.

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

4

- The shop closes in night. (.....)
- In England, it often snows on December. (.....)
- Her birthday is at November 20th. (.....)
- Dad is a baker. He works in the mornings. (.....)

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- to - We - Saturdays - on - the club - go.
.....
- at - start - Over - class - 2 pm - your?
.....
- after - football - On - play - school - I - Wednesdays,
.....
- had - We - a - dinner - Jordanian - traditional.
.....

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child listen and complete.
- (2) Help your child read and correct the underlined words.
- (3) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- Today, they went to the parks. ()
- Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts. ()
- I bought a lovely colorful bag. ()
- Salah is a tour guide. ()

Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

We went to Jordan on vacation. We arrived in Amman and checked in to our hotel in the middle of the city. We had a traditional Jordanian dinner at the Memphis restaurant. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Citadel, explored the Roman Amphitheater, and the Archaeological Museum. On the third day, we headed out for a day trip to As-Salt and visited the Abu Jaber Museum. On the fourth day, we went on a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "vacation" means
a) holiday b) trip c) tour d) work
- They went to the Dead Sea on the day.
a) first b) second c) third d) fourth

4 Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the text?
- Why is the Dead Sea special?

Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A trip to Jordan" words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

(Amman Citadel – Jordanian handicrafts)



★★★★★



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

vacation	إجازة	away	بعيدًا	possible	ممكن
picnic	نزهة	playground	ملعب	bench	مقعد
fantastic	جميل	awesome	رائع	show	عرض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
stay يبقى	stayed	phone يتصل	phoned
agree يوافق	agreed		
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
sit يجلس	sat	come يأتي	came

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	feel sad	يشعر بالحزن
(be) over	ينتهي	had to	أضطر إلى
feel a bit low	يشعر بالإحباط	a whole group	مجموعة كاملة

Vocabulary Check

1 لاحظ أن (feel + adjective) يعبر عن الحالة:

feel + better (adj.) = يشعر بحال أفضل

feel + sad (adj.) = يشعر بالحزن

2 لاحظ أن (such + a/an + adjective) يعبر عن أعلى درجة من الصفة:

It was such a beautiful day.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية QR code.

Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

The beginning

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible – Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.



The middle

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low – I want to be at the beach," said Seleem. "Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park." "Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!" Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past. "Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!" "No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

The end

3 "I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy – now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

Check point

- Why was Seleem feeling a bit low?
- What did they do at the playground?

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفاً حاراً. انتهت المدرسة وأراد الذهاب في إجازة. كان ابن عمه شريف بعيداً على الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضاً. كانت عائلته تذهب عادةً في إجازة مع عائلة شريف، لكن هذا لم يكن ممكناً هذا العام - حصل والد سليم على وظيفة جديدة وكان عليهم البقاء في القاهرة. اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلاً: «مرحباً، كيف حالك يا سليم؟»، قال سليم: «أشعر بالإحباط قليلاً - أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ». «حسنًا، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب، فلنبحث عن شيء آخر لنفعله!» قال مروان: «أعلم، لنذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر». قال سليم: «أنا لا أعرف ذلك، لكن يبدو هذا مثيراً للاهتمام!» وافقت والدته سليم على اصطحابهما إلى الحديقة، قامت بنزهة، لذلك عندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر الرائع واستمتعوا بتناول طعامهم. كان يومًا جميلًا ولعب مروان وسليم كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامى ومaged، صديقاهما من المدرسة، راكضين. «مرحبًا رامى!» صاح سليم: «لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ اعتقدت أنك كنت في الشاطئ!» قال رامى: «لا». «جئت مريضاً لذا أرادت أمي البقاء في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة مما بقيت في المنزل ولم تسافر. هل يمكنك القدوم إلى الملعب معنا؟» سأل سليم والدته وذهبا جميعاً معاً إلى الملعب. جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في الحديقة. «قلت أمي في نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: «أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع». أرى أنه هناك عرضاً الأسبوع المقبل. دعونا نعود مع أبي، ونشاهد العرض وتناول وجبة في المطعم.» شعر سليم بسعادة بالغة - الآن يعرف أن أصدقائه كانوا في المدينة وهناك حديقة رائعة. بدا أن الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعاً!



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth.

لنطق أصوات ال /ð/ و /θ/، اضغط على لسانك ضد أسنانك العلوية.

A) The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it.

الصوت /θ/ غير مسموع، مما يعني أنه يجب أن تشعر ببعض الهواء على يدك عندما تقوله.

B) With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

مع صوت /ð/، لا يوجد هواء، لكن يمكنك الشعور بالاهتزاز في رقبتك.

th /θ/

thing

Thursday

think

three

Earth

author

bathroom

south

birthday

thousand

mourn

th /ð/

these

those

this

with

mother

father

they

other

clothes

leather



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

What is a suffix?

A suffix is a group of letters that comes at the end of a word to give it a new meaning.

اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الأحرف تأتي في نهاية الكلمة لتعطي معنى جديدًا.

Some adjectives have common suffixes:

بعض الصفات لها لاحقات مشتركة:

e.g.

ous

dangerous

خطير

famous

enormous

poisonous

سام

ive

creative

مبدع

expensive

غالي الثمن

active

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 His watch is very (expense – expenses – expensive – expensing).
- 2 The mountain is really (enormous – poisonous – active – expensive).
- 3 Ali is never lazy. He is always (act – activity – active – acted).

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية ال QR code.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words with /θ/ and /ð/ sounds using the QR code and let him/her say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات ال /θ/ و /ð/ باستخدام خاصية ال QR code ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides:

المثلث شكل ثنائي الأبعاد بثلاثة أضلاع:

Types of triangles أنواع المثلثات

1 An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

مثلث متساوي الأضلاع له ثلاثة أضلاع متساوية.



2 A right-angle triangle has one angle that measures 90° .

مثلث قائم الزاوية له زاوية قياسها 90° درجة.



3 An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

مثلث متساوي الساقين له ضلعان متساويان في الطول.



4 A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

المثلث المتدرج له ثلاثة جوانب بأطوال مختلفة.



Parents' tips

Help your child identify the types of triangles correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع المثلثات بطريقة صحيحة.

PRACTICE



Lesson 4

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

5 اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

A

- 1 Everyone knows Soha.
- 2 Omar feels "a bit low".
- 3 Ali swims and runs daily.
- 4 An isosceles triangle
- 5 Summer in the city ...

B

- a. () It is expensive.
- b. () would be awesome.
- c. () She is famous.
- d. () He is not happy.
- e. () He is very active.
- f. () has two sides of equal length.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

4 أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 That – Be – poisonous – snake – careful! – is.

- 2 expensive – very – Fly – is – watch.

- 3 has – sides – An equilateral – equal – three – triangle.

- 4 bit – Sadness – a – feeling – low – was.

3 Punctuate the following:

2 ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 seleem's dad had a new job

- 2 why are you in the city

Parents' tips

- (1) Help your child read and match.
- (2) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- (3) Help your child punctuate the given sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يقوم بالتوصيل.

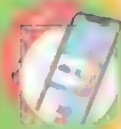
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجميل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.



TEST YOURSELF

on Lesson 4



Listening

15

1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

4

- 1 They all went together to the _____.
- 2 Mom sat on a _____ and enjoyed all the beautiful plants.
- 3 In the evening, they watched the _____ show.
- 4 It seemed that _____ in the city would be awesome!



Reading

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Seleem was feeling sad. He wanted to go on vacation, but this year that wasn't possible – Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, suggested going to Al-Azhar Park. Seleem was interested. Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived **there**, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The text is about Seleem's visit to
a) Al-Azhar park b) the beach c) school d) pool
- 2 The word 'there' refers to
a) Cairo b) vacation c) the park d) the tree

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why couldn't Seleem go on a vacation this year?.....
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "Al-Azhar Park" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من أربعون (40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المعطاة:

5

made a picnic – played football

Assess your progress

★★★★★



STUDY



Writing / Project



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

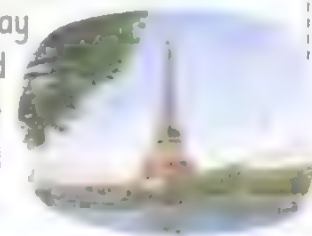


Reem

July 21st

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some **famous sights**⁽¹⁾ from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the **Eiffel Tower**⁽²⁾. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I **tried**⁽³⁾ to speak French but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they **understood**⁽⁴⁾ me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.



- | | |
|-----|---------------------|
| (1) | معالم سياحية مشهورة |
| (2) | برج إيفيل |
| (3) | حاولت |
| (4) | فهم |

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went **early**⁽¹⁾ in the morning but it was still very **busy**⁽²⁾ with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The **smells**⁽³⁾ coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to **go back**⁽⁴⁾ there tomorrow!



- | | |
|-----|---------|
| (1) | مبكراً |
| (2) | مزدحم |
| (3) | الروائح |
| (4) | أعود |

How to write a diary

- 1 Write the date when you start a new diary entry.
- 2 You should start with "Dear Diary".
- 3 You should write about how you felt.
- 4 You should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me".

كتب التاريخ الذي بدأ فيه إدخال يوميات جديدة.
يجب أن تبدأ بـ «مذكراتي العزيزة».
أن تكتب عن كيف كان شعورك.

Parents' tips

Help your child recognize the form of a diary.

ساعد طفلك في التعرف على شكل المذكرات.

الترجمة:

٢١ يوليو

مذكراتي العزيزة،

لقد حظيت بيوم رائع اليوم. ذهبت إلى النهر. لقد رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، وهو متحف جميل بلوحات رائعة، وبرج إيفل مرتفع حقاً ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولت التحدث بالفرنسية لكنني لم أستطع قول أي شيء. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا لطيفين للغاية وعندما تحدثت الإنجليزية فهموني! في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم فرنسي وتناولنا وجبة رائعة مع البطاطس. لقد كان يوماً ممتعاً.

الخامس من أبريل

مذكراتي العزيزة.

أنا أحب هذه المدينة! هنالك الكثير لفعله. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف، متحف جميل عمره ٨٠٠ عاماً ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر لكنه كان لا يزال مشغولاً للغاية بالناس. زرنا أيضاً حديقة ماجوريل، وهي حديقة جميلة حيث كان لدينا نزهة. أحبها هناك لأنها تذكرني قليلاً بحديقة الأزهر في الوطن، لكن مكان المفضل هو جامع الفناء، السوق، الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أشعر بالجوع! تناولت شطيرة أمس. لا أطيق الانتظار للعودة إلى هناك غداً!



Look and read:

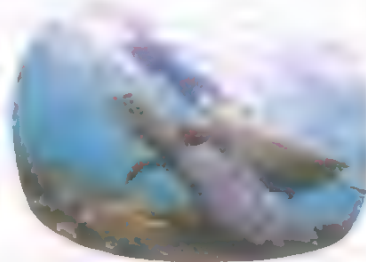
انظر واقرأ:

My perfect vacation

إجازتي المثالية

Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to **sunbath**⁽¹⁾. Swim with the turtles and **catch**⁽²⁾ fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.



(1) يذهب للغطس

(2) زاهى الأتوان

(3) تسابقنا

(4) الكتبان الرملية

(5) عربة الشاطئ

(6) تلحق بـ

(7) من المحتمل

(8) الماضي الثقافي

(9) الشيف (الطاهي)

أطباق

(وجبات محلية)

Day 2

Today, we **race**⁽³⁾ through the **sand dunes**⁽⁴⁾ in beach **buggies**⁽⁵⁾! It's fun and fast! Can you **keep up**⁽⁶⁾?



Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. **Perhaps**⁽⁷⁾ buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.



Day 4

Learn about the city's **cultural past**⁽⁸⁾ with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the **chef**⁽⁹⁾ making the **dishes**⁽¹⁰⁾.



Parents' tips

Help your child recognize the form of a poster about a vacation.

ساعد طفلك في التعرف على شكل ملصق عن الإجازة.

الترجمة:

• اليوم الأول

في الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس. أصبح مع السلاحف والأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع نزهة وكتاب جيد.

• اليوم الثاني

اليوم تسابق عبر الكتبان الرملية في عربات الشاطئ! إنه ممتع وسريع! هل يمكنك أن تلحق بـ؟

• اليوم الثالث

اقض يومًا مريحًا في التسوق والتجول في الأسواق. ربما تشتري بعض الأعمال اليدوية التقليدية لأخذها إلى المنزل.

• اليوم الرابع

تعرف على ماضي المدينة الثقافي بزيارة المتحف اليوم. في المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدي حيث يمكنك رؤية الشيف وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.

PRACTICE



Lessons 5&6

11

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

4

I'm on a _____ in Morocco.

Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa is a beautiful _____ that is 800 years old!

We visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely _____ where we had a picnic.

The _____ coming from the market stalls make me hungry!

2 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

The eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal

i tried to speak french, but I couldn't.

3 Write a diary entry of FORTY (40) words about "A day when you did something special" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مذكرة مكونة من أربعين (40) كلمة عن يوم فعلت به شيئًا مميزًا باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

Place

Dahab, Egypt

Tourist Attractions

the beach, bazaars

Activities

snorkeling, safari trip

Dear Diary,

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child listen and complete.

(2) Help your child punctuate the given sentence or questions.

(3) Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.

ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل أو الأسئلة المعطاة.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



TEST YOURSELF on Lessons 5&6



Listening

13

4

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 They are on a vacation in London.
- 2 The Eiffel Tower is made of metal.
- 3 He can speak French.
- 4 They had a wonderful meal with potatoes.

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- ()
()
()
()



Reading

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- A**
- 1 We go to the beach ...
 - 2 We race through the sand dunes ...
 - 3 Swim with the turtles ...
 - 4 Learn about the city's cultural past ...
 - 5 The Eiffel Tower is really tall ...

- B**
- a. () in beach buggies.
 - b. () to go snorkeling.
 - c. () with a trip to the museum.
 - d. () and colored fish.
 - e. () but I couldn't.
 - f. () and made of metals.



Writing

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 such - I - day - a cool - had - today.
.....
- 2 tried - French - speak - I - to.
.....
- 3 French - went - a - We - restaurant - to.
.....
- 4 wait - go - can't - tomorrow - I - back - to.
.....

UNIT 12

REVIEW



Vocabulary



ticket



suitcase



hotel



tourist



passport



swimming pool

Language Focus

Prepositions of Time (on / at / in)

- 1 We use **on** with **days of the week** and for **special days** and **specific dates**:



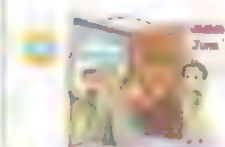
I go swimming

- 2 We use **at** with **times**, and to say **at night**, and **at lunchtime**:



Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.

- 3 We use **in** with **months**, **seasons**, and **years**, and also with **times of day**:



We visit our cousins **in** June.

Pronunciation

th /θ/

thing

Thursday

think

three

Earth

author

bathroom

south

birthday

thousand

mouth

th /ð/

these

those

this

with

mother

father

they

other

clothes

leather





Lesson 1

.....	حقيبة سفر	.....	تذكرة
.....	سائح	.....	فندق
.....	حمام سباحة	.....	حوار سفر
.....	روح	.....	رحلة
.....	سطح	.....	إجازة
.....	مدينة الملاهي	.....	رحلة جوية

Lesson 2

.....	ضوء الشمس	.....	دراجة
.....	ذهب	.....	أطباق بلاستيكية
.....	خذاء مصنوع من الجلد	.....	الرمال
.....	محاصيل	.....	جلاية
.....	قصب	.....	حبوب
.....	سترة	.....	سلال

Lesson 3

.....	المدرج الروماني	.....	المتحف الأثري
.....	متحف أبو جابر	.....	قلعة عمان
.....	تقليدي	.....	البحر الميت
.....	فن	.....	قديم
.....	سجادة	.....	أعمال يدوية
.....	مرشد سياحي	.....	كشك

Lesson 4

.....	يوم الخميس	.....	شيء
.....	ثلاثة	.....	يعتقد
.....	عيد ميلاد	.....	جنوب
.....	فم	.....	ألف
.....	ملابس	.....	أب
.....	مبدع	.....	خطير
.....	مشهور	.....	غالي الثمن
.....	صخم	.....	نشيط
.....	أم	.....	سام

WRITING TIME

“A vacation in Singapore”

high-rise buildings – boat trips

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park, too.

“Resources”

- * What are natural resources?
- * Give more or two examples of man-made resources.

There are two different resources on Earth. Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone are examples of natural resources. Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

“A trip to Jordan”

Amman Citadel – Jordanian handicrafts

We went to Jordan on a vacation. We had a traditional Jordanian dinner at the Memphis restaurant. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Citadel, explored the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. We bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls.

“Al-Azhar Park”

made a picnic – played football

Seleem, his mom, and Walid went all to the Al-Azhar Park. Mom made a picnic, so when they arrived they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. Walid and Seleem played football. It was such a beautiful hot day.

1 Read and choose the correct word:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- The stars shine (at – in – from – on) night.
- I brush my teeth (on – in – next – at) the morning.
- The match is at (4 o'clock – Tuesday – morning – the evening).
- He bought a very (expense – expenses – expensive – expensed) car last month.

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

اقرأ وصحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط:

4

- Nour is very act. She is never lazy. (.....)
- Grandma was born on 1962. (.....)
- We went back to our hotel at Wednesday. (.....)
- The shop opened on 2002. (.....)

3 Read and rewrite the following:

اقرأ وأعد كتابة الآتي:

4

- Her birthday is in May. (May 22nd)
- He always works hard. (active)
- That house costs a lot of money. (expensive)
- I wake up at 6 am. (morning)

Parents' tips

- Help your child read and choose.
- Help your child correct the underlined words.
- Help your child rewrite the sentences or questions correctly.



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

4

- Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. ()
- Trees and stone are man-made resources. ()
- Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. ()
- Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are man-made resources. ()

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

4

- Last week, Sami enjoyed a tour of
- I visited the famous Amman
- He had lunch in a local
- He spent the afternoon and evening through Amman's many colorful markets.



3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

5

- | | |
|---|--|
| A <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The Gardens by the Bay ... Man-made resources ... Trees and stone ... Because Farouk lives in Aswan ... I always take my phone ... | B <ol style="list-style-type: none"> () are natural resources. () so I can take photos. () are things that humans have made. () It feels hard and dry. () he knows that the sun will shine most days. () is a really special place. |
|---|--|

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

6

Lama is going on vacation. She is traveling to France by plane. Today, she is **packing** her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in France, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Lama loves swimming and asked her friend in France if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Lama is traveling to France by
a) car b) train c) plane d) ship
- 2 The word 'pack' means to things for a holiday.
a) clean b) wash c) dry d) prepare

Answer the following questions:

3 What's the main idea of the text?

4 Where could Lama swim?



Writing

Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4

- 1 low – a – am – feeling – I – bit.
.....
- 2 farmer – is – Aswan – Farah – a – from.
.....
- 3 spend – Where – will – you – next – your – vacation?
.....
- 4 people – kind – very – were – French.
.....

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

- 1 it's hot here in Singapore
- 2 Can we go to al-Azhar Park

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "My perfect vacation" using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

5

Where did you go? – What did you do?

Review

4



Places to spend the holiday



Read and notice:

Hi Magdy,
I'm having a lovely⁽¹⁾ time here. It's peaceful⁽²⁾ and very quiet, especially⁽³⁾ at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.

Bye!

Ali

أهلاً مجدى

أنا أقضى وقتاً جميلاً هنا. الجو هادئ هنا وخاصة ليلاً. يوجد القليل من المحلات والمنازل وهناك مطعم واحد فقط، ولكن الأمر رائع! كل من يعيش هنا ودود حقاً.

مع السلامة، على

A village

Dear Amr,
Thank you for telling me to pack⁽¹⁾ some good hiking shoes and a sun hat! We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see – some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox⁽²⁾ and a wild⁽³⁾ cat!

Hope you're all well,

Salah

عريى عمرو

أشكرك لأنك أخبرتني أن أحزم أحذية تريض جيدة وقبعة شمس! نحن نمشى لساعات طويلة كل يوم. يوجد العديد من الأشياء المدهشة لرؤيتها هنا - بعض الأشجار والأزهار النادرة. فى يوم ما، كنت محظوظاً بما يكفى لرؤية ثعلب الفنك وقطة بريّة. أتمنى أن تكون بخير، صلاح

A nature trail

اقرأ ولاحظ:

- | | |
|-----|------|
| (1) | جميل |
| (2) | هادئ |
| (3) | خاصة |

Hi Ghada,

We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater⁽¹⁾, and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded⁽²⁾.

See you soon,⁽³⁾

Randa

أهلاً غادة

وصلنا يوم الاثنين، ولم نتوقف! يوجد الكثير لرؤيته هنا. قمنا بزيارة بعض المتاحف والمسرح وقمنا بجولة رائعة لبعض الأماكن المشهورة. المكان حقاً ممتع، ولكنه مشغول جداً ومزدحم. أراك قريباً، راندا

A busy city

Hello Rabab,

How are you? I'm having a real adventure⁽¹⁾ here. We arrived on the weekend and set up⁽²⁾ our tent.⁽³⁾ It's quiet difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around⁽⁴⁾ a fire. (It gets really cold here at night). We sing songs⁽⁵⁾ and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.

See you next week,

Sahar

أهلاً رباب

كيف حالك؟ أنا حقاً أقوم بمغامرة حقيقية هنا. نحن وصلنا فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع وأقمنا خيمة. من الصعب إلى حد ما النوم فى خيمة على الرمال. نقوم بإشعال نار فى الليل ونجلس حولها. يصبح الجو بارداً حقاً هنا ليلاً. نغنى الأغاني ونأكل طعاماً لذيذاً، ذلك الطعام الذى قمنا بطهيه على النار. يمكنك رؤية ملايين النجوم! إنها جميلة. أراك الأسبوع القادم، سحر

A desert

- | | |
|-----|-------------|
| (1) | مسرح |
| (2) | مزدحم |
| (3) | أراك قريباً |

- | | |
|-----|-------------|
| (1) | مغامرة |
| (2) | ينصب / يقيم |
| (3) | خيمة |
| (4) | يجلس حول |
| (5) | أغانٍ |

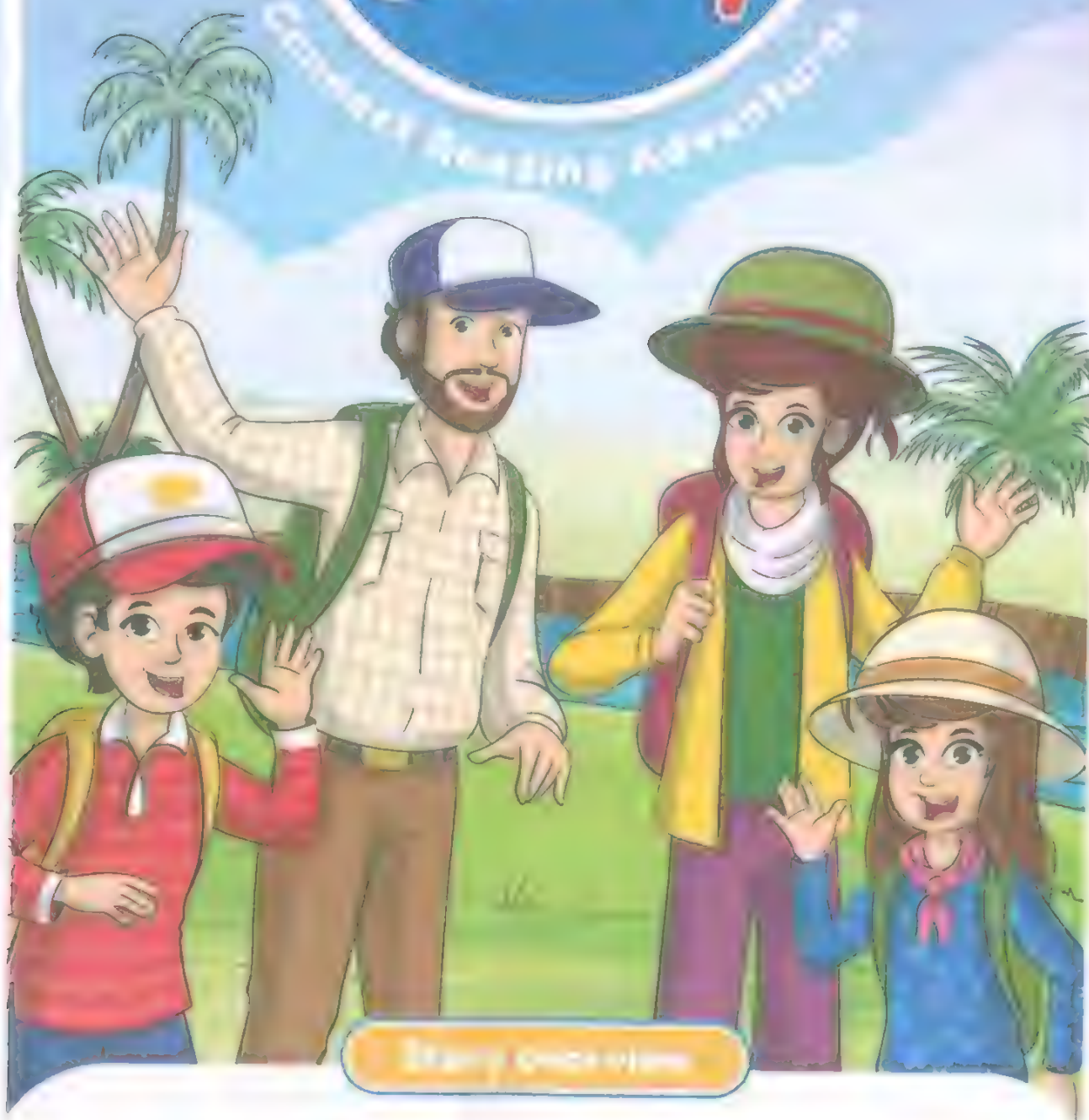
Parents' tips

Help your child read about how people spend their vacations and where.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن كيف وأين يقضى الناس إجازاتهم.

Fiction Reader

Story



Story Comprehension

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

- Identify the characters and the main events in a story.
- Guess what is going to happen next in a story.
- Give an opinion about a story.

A Fantastic Family Adventure

Title

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



Retold by Nicola Gardner

Author
المؤلف

Illustrated by Nathalie Ortega

Illustrator
الرسام

Warm up

Ramy and Malak are brother and sister. A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur near their grandparents' village. The kids' uncle is one of these archaeologists, so they want to see the skeleton. They travel to the village with their family. They want to go through a nature trail to reach that place. They prepare their food and tools, then they go on the trip. They see many animals, plants, birds and rocks in the desert. They find bones of an old ibex in the desert. At the end, they manage to reach the place and see the skeleton of the dinosaur. They had a fantastic adventure. The kids learned to look around them and notice things carefully.

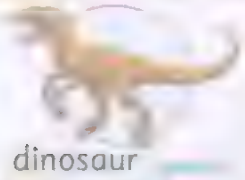


Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



dinosaur

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت لملايين السنين في الماضي.



bones

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

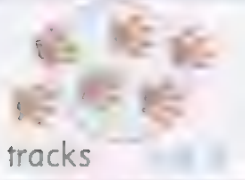
نوجد بأجسامنا العديد من العظام لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



skeleton هيكل عظمي

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

لدى الأسماك وحيوانات أخرى هيكل عظمي من عظام موحدة بداخل أجسامهم.



tracks

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

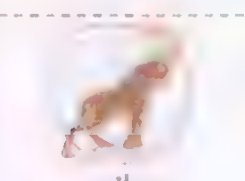
أقدام الحيوانات ترك آثارًا على الأرض حيث تمشي.



binoculars منظار (مجهز ذو عيني)

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب (هي) النظر إلى الأشياء التي على بعد باستخدام المنظار الخاص بها.



ibex

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

حيوان الوعل هو حيوان يعيش في الصحراء يشبه الغزال.

حيوان الوعل (مأخر جلي تعيش في جبال الألب)



archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو شخص يحفر تحت الأرض ليجد أشياء تعود إلى الماضي ويقوم بدراساتها.



archaeological dig حفر أثري

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

الحفر الأثري هو عمل مجموعة أشخاص سويًا لإيجاد شيء أثري تحت الأرض.



yard



newspaper جريدة



village قرية



desert



natural trail

مسار طبيعي (مسار مخصص للمشاة)



feteer فطير



mint tea شاي بالنعناع



hats



scarves أوشحة



sunglasses نظارات شمسية



snacks وجبات خفيفة



backpacks حقائب ظهر



cactus plants

نباتات الصبار



palm trees أشجار النخيل



sheep أغنام



camels جمال



fennec fox

الفنك (ثعلب الصحراء)



dorcas gazelle

غزال دوركاس (غزال تعيش في الصحراء)



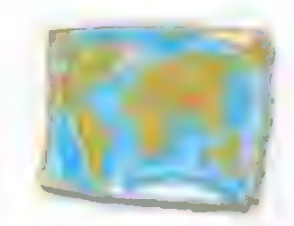
sand cat

قط الرمال (قط يعيش في الصحراء)



rocks

صخور



map



rain



wind



planet كوكب

suddenly (adv.)	فجأة	inside	داخل
scary (adj.)	مرعب / مخيف	a group of	مجموعة من
adventure	مغامرة	prepared (v.)	جهز
area	منطقة	part	جزء
warm (adj.)	دافئ	perfect (adj.)	مثالي
pleased (adj.)	مسرور	quietly (adv.)	بهدوء
carefully (adv)	بحرص	continue (v.)	يستمر
along (adv)	بطول	look down (v.)	ينظر للأسفل
path	ممر	strange (adj.)	غريب
photographs	صور	go back (v.)	يعود
certainly (adv)	بالتأكيد	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
type	نوع	ancient (adj.)	قديم / أثري
exist (v.)	يتواجد	disappointed (adj.)	محبط
dry (adj.)	جاف	blow away (v.)	يعصف بعيدًا
notice (v.)	يلحظ	hard (adj.)	صعب
look for (v.)	يبحث عن	surface	سطح
environment	بيئة	discover (v.)	يكشف
look around	ينظر حول		

That's awesome.	إنه رائع	That's right/You're right.	هذا صحيح
Later that evening	لاحقًا هذا المساء	That's a great idea.	يا لها من فكرة رائعة.
It's good/lovely to see you.	من الجيد رؤيتك	It's lovely to be here.	من الرائع التواجد هنا.
rare animals	حيوانات نادرة	Well done!	أحسن
under the ground	تحت الأرض	in fact	في الحقيقة....
climate change	تغير مناخ	that's good/bad for	إنه جيد / سيئ من أجل
getting ready	يستعد	It's such a cool job!	يا لها من وظيفة رائعة
fascinating work	عمل مذهل	Thank you dear	شكرًا يا عزيزي/ عزيزتي
See you soon.	أراك قريبًا		



Story Elements



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Characters

الشخصيات



Ramy



Malak



Dad



Mom



Grandma
الجددة



Grandpa
الجد



Uncle Youssef
العم يوسف

Setting المكان



The family's house
منزل العائلة



Grandparents' house
منزل الأجداد



The nature trail
الممر الطبيعي
(ممر مخصص للمشى)



The area of the dinosaur skeleton

Plot الحبكة



The Beginning

Dad tells Ramy and Malak that a group of archaeologists found a dinosaur skeleton near their grandparents' village. The children want to go there to see the skeleton.



The Middle

The family starts their adventure. The family goes along a nature trail to reach the skeleton area. They see many animals, plants and birds. They also find bones of an ancient ibex in the desert.



The End

Finally, the family reaches the area of the skeleton with Uncle Youssef. Uncle Youssef tells them about how archaeologists find ancient things.

Parents' tips

Discuss the story elements like characters, setting, and plot "the beginning, the middle, and the end" with your child.

ناقش عناصر القصة مثل الشخصيات، المكان، الزمان، والحبكة (البداية والمتنصف والنهاية) مع طفلك.



Story



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house. "Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the **skeleton** of a **dinosaur**. A group of **archaeologists** found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

skeleton

هيكل عظمي

dinosaur

ديناصور

archaeologist

عالم آثار



"That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"
 "Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"
 "Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really **interesting** job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.
 "Yes, he has. And his work is **important** too. It helps us learn about **the past**," says Dad.

يقول الأب: «نعم، إنه كذلك وعمله مهم أيضًا. يساعدنا عمله في التعرف على الماضي.»
 «واو! دكتور يوسف حصل على وظيفة **مهمّة** حقًا، أليس كذلك؟» يقول رامى.
 «نعم، حصل. وعمله **مهم** جدًا. يساعدنا في التعرف على **الماضي**» يقول الأب.

الماضي the past مهم important ممتعة interesting



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.
 Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"
 Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an **adventure** to go into the **desert**!"
 Mom says, "There's a beautiful **nature trail** there." Why don't we walk that together?" "Oh yes please, Mom!" I love nature. "says Malak.

جديكم؟» يقول رامى: «إنها فكرة رائعة يا أبى. ستكون بمثابة مغامرة فى الصحراء.» تقول الأم: «يوجد ممر طبيعى هناك (ممر مخصص للمشى). لماذا لا نسير هناك سوياً؟» تقول ملك: «أوه نعم، من فضلك يا أمى.» أنا أحب الطبيعة.

nature trail مغامرة adventure لاحقاً هذا المساء Later that evening ممر طبيعى (ممر مخصص للمشى)



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren. "I have **prepared** your favourite things: **feteer** and **mint tea**! Come inside and eat."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

الأمم المتحدة في المنطقة من أجل التنمية المستدامة. إن التنمية المستدامة هي التنمية التي تلبي احتياجات الحاضر دون المساس بقدرة الأجيال القادمة على تلبية احتياجاتها الخاصة. إن التنمية المستدامة هي التنمية التي تأخذ بعين الاعتبار الأبعاد الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية. إن التنمية المستدامة هي التنمية التي تأخذ بعين الاعتبار الأبعاد الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية. إن التنمية المستدامة هي التنمية التي تأخذ بعين الاعتبار الأبعاد الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية.

prepared (v.) | جهاز | feteer | فطير | mint tea | شاي بالنعناع



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their **backpacks**. Mom has some **binoculars** too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of **rare animals**.

البيئة المحيطة بهم. إن البيئة المحيطة بهم هي البيئة التي تلبي احتياجات الحاضر دون المساس بقدرة الأجيال القادمة على تلبية احتياجاتها الخاصة. إن البيئة المحيطة بهم هي البيئة التي تأخذ بعين الاعتبار الأبعاد الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية. إن البيئة المحيطة بهم هي البيئة التي تأخذ بعين الاعتبار الأبعاد الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية. إن البيئة المحيطة بهم هي البيئة التي تأخذ بعين الاعتبار الأبعاد الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية.

backpacks. | حقائب ظهر | binoculars | منظار (مجهر ذو عينين) | rare animals | حيوانات نادرة

The Middle



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are **cactus plants** and palm trees, and they see **sheep** and some camels.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone," she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a **dorcas gazelle**, or maybe a sand cat."

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals tracks in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

الأسرة تستمتع بالمشي في الصحراء. الجو دافئ جداً، ليس حاراً. إنه يوم مثالي للمشي. هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل، ويرون الأغنام وبعض الجمال. مالكة سعيدة جداً لأنها تحب الحيوانات. "يرجى المشي بهدوء وحرصاً الجميع"، تقول. "إذا كنا هادئين، يمكننا أن نرى فennec fox، أو غزال دوركاس، أو ربما قطب الرمل." العائلة تستمر في المشي على المسار. رامى يلاحظ آثار الحيوانات في الرمال.爸爸 يأخذ صورة من فennec fox. أمي ترون طيور جميلة كثيرة. الجميع يستمتع بالمسار.

cactus plants

نباتات الصبار

sheep

أغنام

dorcas gazelle

غزال دوركاس (غزال يعيش في الصحراء)



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"

She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the **path**. He sees some **strange** shapes inside them.

"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"

"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like **bones** ..."

"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom.

"Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"

"Yes, of course," says Dad.

Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some **photographs** of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

ثم تقول أمي، "هيا يا جميع، لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟" أمي تجلس. الآخرون يشربون بعض الماء ويصبرون. رامى ينظر لأسفل إلى الصخور بالقرب من **الممر**. يرى بعض **أشياء غريبة** أشكالاً بداخلها. "انظروا!" يقول. "ما هذه الأشياء في الصخور، بابا؟" "أنا لا أعرف"، يقول بابا. "يبدو أنهم **عظام** ...". "نحن قريبون جداً من المكان الذي وجدوا فيه هيكل العظماء الديناصورات"، تقول أمي. "ربما هم عظام الديناصورات!" رامى متحمس جداً. "دعنا نسأل عم يوسف!" يقول. "بابا، هل يمكننا الاتصال به؟" "نعم، بالتأكيد"، يقول بابا. عم يوسف مهتم جداً بالصخور التي وجدها رامى. يخبر بابا أن يأخذ بعض **صور** من هذه الصخور وافتح له في بيت جدينا العشاء.

path

ممر

strange

غريب

bones

عظام

photographs

صور



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the **map**. Uncle Youssef asks the family to **go back** there with him the next day.

بعد ذلك مساءً، الأب يظهر لعم يوسف الصور، ويظهر لرامي المكان على الخريطة. يسأل عم يوسف العائلة أن يذهبوا معه إلى هناك في اليوم التالي.



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient **ibex** that doesn't **exist** now."

Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

في اليوم التالي، ذهبوا مع عم يوسف على طول المسار. وجدوا صخور رامي وعم يوسف ينظر إليها بعناية. "إنهم ليسوا عظام ديناصور في الصخور"، يقول عم يوسف. "ولكنهم بالتأكيد قديمون جداً. إنهم ربما من نوع من أنواع **إيبكس** القديمة التي لا **توجد** الآن."

يرامى أن يكون رامي قد وجد العظام من ديناصور. لكن عم يوسف يقول، "ممتاز جداً رامي على إيجادهم! من المهم أن نأخذ وقتاً لننظر إلى العالم من حولنا ونراقب الأشياء - تماماً مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل تريدون جميعاً أن تأتيوا إلى الحفرة لترى هيكل عظام ديناصوري؟" "نعم بالطبع، عم يوسف!" يقول رامي وملاك.

The End



"Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
 "Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
 "And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.
 "In fact, we found the skeleton because of **climate change**," says Uncle Youssef.
 "Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can **blow away** the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the **surface**. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

هنا هو، يقول أعمام يوسف. "ماذا رأيتم؟"
 "واو!" يقول رامي. "مذهل أن نفكر أنه عاش ملايين السنين."
 "وأن عظامه كانت تحت الأرض لفترة طويلة جدًا." يقول مالكة.
 "في الواقع، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب **تغير المناخ**،" يقول أعمام يوسف.
 "الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. هذا يعني أن الأرض جافة والرياح يمكن أن **تفكك** الرمال. الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تأتي إلى **السطح**. هذا جيد للباحثين في الآثار، لكنه سيئ للكرة الأرضية."

climate change | تغير مناخي | blow away (v.) | يعصف بعيدًا | surface | سطح



Later everyone is getting ready to go home.
 "Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy. "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"
 "It's **fascinating work**, but it's **hard**," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we **look for** years and don't find anything."
 "We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.
 "Thanks for all the delicious food." says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."
 "Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." Grandma.

بعد ذلك، الجميع يستعدون للذهاب إلى المنزل.
 "شكراً على إظهارنا الديناصور، أعمام يوسف،" يقول رامي. "كان مثيراً جداً. أريد أن أصبح باحث في الآثار. إنه عمل رائع."
 "إنه **عمل مثير**، لكنه **صعب**،" يقول أعمام يوسف، "أحياناً نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئاً."
 "نحن يمكننا مساعدتك إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!" تقول مالكة.
 "شكراً على كل الطعام اللذيذ." تقول أمي. "كان من لطيف أن نراكما مرة أخرى."
 "شكراً يا حبيبتي. عد وارجع إلينا قريباً." جدة.

fascinating work | عمل مثير | hard | صعب | look for (v.) | يبحث عن



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to **look around** us carefully and notice things in our **environment**."

"Yes, that is how you can **discover** interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

تسأل الأم في السيارة: «هل استمتعتم بالرحلة؟» يقول رامى: «نعم، لقد كانت رائعة.» تقول ملك: «وأنا أيضًا.» يقول الأب: «ماذا

حولنا.» تضيف ملك: «صحيح. هذا ما يجعلنا نكتشف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام.» يقول الأب: «أنتم على حق يا أولاد. أحسنتم.»

look around ينظر حول environment بيئة discover يكتشف

STORY

GENERAL PRACTICE

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. ()
- 2 Dad is reading a story. ()
- 3 A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur. ()
- 4 Uncle Youssef is a teacher. ()

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- 1 The family go to the trail.
- 2 They are wearing hats, and sunglasses.
- 3 Mom takes to see the birds.
- 4 They see many rare along the trail.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- A**
- 1 Grandma has prepared ...
 - 2 Ramy sees animals ...
 - 3 There are ibex ...
 - 4 The wind can ...
 - 5 Dad takes ...

- B**
- a. () tracks in the sand.
 - b. () bones inside the rocks.
 - c. () blow away the sand.
 - d. () strange shapes.
 - e. () feteer and mint tea.
 - f. () some photographs.

Parents tips

- (1) Help your child listen and write T (True) or F (False).
- (2) Help your child listen and complete.
- (3) Help your child read and match.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (صح أو خطأ).
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a dinosaur near a small village. It's Grandparents' village. Ramy and Malak go with their family to the village to see the skeleton. Their uncle is one of those archaeologists. The family goes along a nature trail to reach the place of the skeleton. It is a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees in the desert. There are birds and animals like sheep and camels. Ramy finds bones near some rocks. Later on, Uncle Youssef tells them they are bones of ancient ibex. It was a fantastic adventure.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A group of archaeologists found a skeleton of a/an
a) dog b) camel c) elephant d) dinosaur
- 2 Ramy finds near some rocks.
a) seeds b) bones c) boxes d) food

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why do the children go to the village?
- 4 Who is Uncle Youssef?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 disappointed – is – Ramy – Why?
.....
- 2 did – the – Where – find – archaeologists – skeleton – the?
.....
- 3 adventure – It – was – a fantastic.
.....
- 4 trail – There's – a beautiful – nature – there.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words on "A fantastic Adventure" using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من 40 كلمة باستخدام العناصر المساعدة:

Where do the children go?
What do they do there?

Parents' tips

- (4) Help your child read the text and answer.
- (5) Help your child reorder to write correct sentences or questions.
- (6) Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.

Tape Scripts

7 Homes in Egypt

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

- 1 Fareeda : Welcome to my new apartment, Dina!
Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?
Fareeda : Yes. It's a great apartment!
Dina : What's better about this new apartment?
Fareeda : It's much bigger than our old apartment.
We have three bedrooms now and two bathrooms.
Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

- 1 My name is Omar. I love my living room. I spend most of time here in the living room. On the right, there is a couch with two modern cushions. On the left, there are an armchair and a big television in front of it. I love watching television at night with my family.

Test Yourself on Lessons 3&4

- 1 My name is Salma. I'm doing research about Ancient Egyptian homes. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. Not many people had beds or chairs.

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

- 1 Dalida likes blogging about different things. This week she's writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for her because her mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes Dalida to see some brilliant places. She found an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down!

8 At the doctor's

Al-Adwaa Test

- 1 I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall there are lots of posters of animals.
- 2 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

8 At the doctor's

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

- 1 My name is Ahmed. I go to school every day, but yesterday I didn't go to school. I felt very ill. I told my Mom and she thought I hurt my ankle at the football practice, but I didn't. Then she thought I have a headache, but I didn't. My teeth hurt. We went to the dentist. I feel fine now.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

- 1 Yesterday, I went to the zoo with my family. I have one brother. His name is Hossam. Hossam is blind. We both love animals. Our favorite animal is the elephant. It was our first time to go to the zoo. I described the elephant to my brother because he always wanted to know how it looks like in real life.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

- 1 There is a city in southern India, called Bangalore. It's a very busy and crowded hospital. When a man is sick his whole family goes with him. So, the hospital decided to teach the patients' relatives how to look after a sick person. The doctors and nurses taught the patients' relatives how to give injections and change bandages.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

My name is Eman. I'm a doctor. I work in a hospital. My favorite food is honey. I like honey because it's not only a food, but it's also a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's a special honey. Only doctors use it.

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

Mazen : Do you have a presentation at school today?

Salma : Yes, I do.

Mazen : What is your presentation about?

Salma : It's about staying healthy.

Mazen : I think it's really important to have a balanced diet to be healthy.

Salma : That's right. Playing sports, getting enough sleep, and drinking water is also important.

Al-Adwaa Test

1 My name is Malek. I'm a doctor in a hospital in Bangalore, India. The hospital is very busy and crowded, but it's very special because we teach the relatives of the patients how to take care of them when they leave the hospital. We turn the hospital corridors into classrooms. We teach them how to change bandages and to give injections.

2 Ahmed : What's the matter?

Mai : I feel very sick.

Ahmed : Do you have a stomachache?

Mai : No, I don't.

Ahmed : Do you have a sore throat?

Mai : Yes, I do. I'll drink honey and lemon.

My favorite animal

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

Ayman : What did you see at the wildlife park?

Ramez : The kangaroos were interesting.

Ayman : What birds did you see?

Ramez : Lots. But my favorites were the parrots.

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside.

Practice on Lesson 2

1 Ayman : Hi Ali, **could** you jump when you were three?

Ali : No, but I could walk.

Ayman : What else could you **do** when you were young?

Ali : I could **jump** and run. What about you?

Ayman : I could **speak** French when I was younger.

Ali : Wow! That sounds amazing.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1 I'm Salma. Last year, I went to the desert with my family. Suddenly, we were lost in the desert. It was very hot that day. We found a big tree. We rested in its shade and drank some water. We were very grateful to that tree.

Practice on Lesson 3

Scribes were the only people who could write everything for the people. They trained for 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. They also did other important things like order materials and food for the army.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1 'Precipitation' is when rain falls from clouds and goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and oceans. 'Evaporation' is when the sun warms water and it becomes water vapor. Water vapor rises in the air and gets cooler; it changes back into water and forms clouds. Water in the clouds gets heavier and falls to the ground again.

Practice on Lesson 4

1 Ali : What's your dad's **job**?

Hossam : He's a **farmer**.

Ali : What does he do?

Hossam : He **produces** the food which people need.

Ali : Where does he work?

Hossam : He works on his **farm** in Giza.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1 Last winter, Waleed decided to travel west in his boat wearing his vest. He was looking for a volcano. He met some whales and they turned over his boat. He had to sit on his violin to stay afloat. He ate watermelon to stay healthy and he came to shore.

Practice on Lessons 5&6

1 Tamer : What's your favorite unusual animal?

Amir : Dugong from Egypt.

Tamer : Why is it unusual?

Amir : It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow

Tamer : What else?

Amir : It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

1 Dear Tamer,
This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. Dugong is an unusual animal from Egypt. It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed.
Hope to hear from you soon!
Amir

Al-Adwaa Test

1 Snails have a shell. They don't have legs or arms. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Bats fly at night. They sleep upside down in trees. Lions live in Africa. It's a very big cat. It's very strong.

2 Penguins live on ice and snow. They are black and white. They can swim, but they can't fly. Parrot is a bird. It is very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest. Dolphins are very intelligent. They swim in a group with their family in the ocean. Pandas live in China. They eat bamboo.

Let's Visit Egypt

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1 Kira and Lena are from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what they love most about Alexandria. There are many stores and shopping malls. They spend a lot of time walking around them. Kira and Lena like the people. They are so friendly and hospitable.

Test Yourself on Lessons 2&3

1 There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. Paintings show scenes of daily life, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events. Artifacts are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

- 1 Gabi, the camel, was lost. He met the jerboa. The jerboa has enormous ears that he can hear the sounds of the market traders. Gabi refused any help. Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he apologized.

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

- 1 It often rains in London, but there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges.

Al-Adwaa Test

- 1 There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. We can learn about buildings from Ancient monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people. There are also paintings on walls and papyrus that show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions.

- 2 In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!

Getting out in the Fresh Air

Test Yourself on Lessons 1&2

- 1 Sara likes to spend her weekend outdoors. She suggested to spend this weekend on a natural trail. Her family thinks it's a great idea. They have two choices. They can go to Wadi Degla, where they can see lots of animals. Or they can go to the Blue Lagoon where they can swim and dive.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

- 1 The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 km through mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project that helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history and share it with the hikers who come to visit this beautiful area.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

- 1 My name is Lama. Yesterday I read story about a king. He was wearing a big ring. He likes nature. He was looking at the sun. Suddenly, the phone rang and he heard a big bang.

Practice on Lessons 5&6

- 1 A: Hi Malak! Are you free on the weekend?
B: Sure! What should we do?
A: My mom and dad want to do a desert hike. Do you want to come?
B: Yes, that sounds like fun!
A: What should I bring?
B: Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater.

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

- 1 Wael chatted with Hamza on the tablet. Hamza suggested that they would spend the evening together. Wael thought it was a great idea. They arranged to meet up at Elhurrya café where they can have a drink and play some chess. Then, they may go to the cinema to see a movie.

Al-Adwaa Test

- 1 The Red Sea Mountain Trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place and about their fascinating culture.

- 2 Aser: Hi Ali, how are things?
Ali: Fine Aser! How are you?
Aser: Do you want to get a drink later?
Ali: That a great idea, what time?
Aser: Let's say at 5.00 pm. At Latino Café.
Ali: OK, see you later!

Vacations

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

- 1 Mom: Where did you go on your vacation?
Nadia: We were in India last week. This week, we are in Singapore.
Mom: What is special about the city?
Nadia: There are lots of high-rise buildings. The Gardens by the Bay are really special.
Mom: Singapore is a wonderful city. What did you do there?
Nadia: We went on a boat trip to an island where there is a theme park.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

- 1 Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. There is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming; she could swim in a river or a lake.

Practice on Lesson 3

- 1 On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

- 1 I'm on a vacation in Jordan. Today, we went to the markets. When we arrived, we wandered through the streets. Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me. I spent hours in the museum.

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

- 1 They all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. In the evening, they watched the dance show and had a meal at the restaurant. Selim felt very happy, it seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

Practice on Lessons 5&6

- 1 I'm on a vacation in Morocco. Today, we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fraa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!

Test Yourself on Lessons 5&6

- 1 I'm on a vacation in France. We saw some famous sights. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French but I couldn't. But when I spoke English, French people understood me! We went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes.

Al-Adwaa Test

- 1 There are two different resources on Earth. Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone are examples of natural resources. Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and plastic clothes are examples of man-made resources.

2

My name is Sami. Last week I enjoyed a tour of Amman. I visited the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, I spent the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets. It was a cool tour.

Story

A Fantastic Family Adventure

Story General Practice

1

Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly, Dad calls them from the house. He wants them to come and see a story in the newspaper. The children run inside to see the story. A group of archaeologists found a dinosaur skeleton near Grandma's and Grandpa's village. Uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists.

2

The family leaves Grandparents' house. They go to the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves and sunglasses. Mom takes binoculars to see the birds. They see many rare animals along the trail. They see cactus plants and palm trees. Dad takes photographs of animals there. It was a fantastic adventure.

Notes